# The `ubcthesis` Package*

Copyright (C) 2001 by Michael McNeil Forbes

2015/05/31

## Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>User Guide: For those writing theses</th>
<th>6</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>Disclaimer</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>Versions</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Getting Started</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1</td>
<td>Obtaining the <code>ubcthesis</code> package</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.1</td>
<td>Bleeding Edge Development Version</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1.2</td>
<td>Files</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>Installing the <code>ubcthesis</code> package</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1</td>
<td>Documentation</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2</td>
<td>Generating the <code>.cls</code> class files</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.3</td>
<td>Sample Thesis</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3</td>
<td>Using with LyX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1</td>
<td>Warning</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Writing a Thesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>University Flavour</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Page Style</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1</td>
<td>Headers and Footers</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Class Options</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Interface Guidelines</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Options</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>Counters</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Lengths</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Commands</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

*This is `ubcthesis.dtx` version v1.72 dated 2015/05/31. Mercurial id: Id:c52b4f70ae13, Rev:167, Tag:tip
# 18 Document Markup Functions

18.1 Title Page ........................................ 62
18.2 Fonts .......................................... 65
18.3 Spacing ....................................... 66

# 19 Declaration of Options

19.1 Setting Paper Sizes .................................. 67
19.2 Choosing the type size ................................ 68
19.3 Two-side or one-side printing ......................... 68
19.4 Page number placement ............................... 68
19.5 Draft and committee options ......................... 68
19.6 openright option .................................. 69
19.7 Two-column printing ................................ 69
19.8 Running headers ................................... 69
19.9 Equation numbering on the left ....................... 70
19.10 Flush left displays .................................. 70
19.11 Title page ....................................... 70
19.12 Headings ......................................... 71
19.13 Figures and Tables ................................ 72
19.14 Footnotes ........................................ 73
19.15 Bibliography ...................................... 73
19.16 Appendix ......................................... 73
19.17 Open bibliography ................................ 74
19.18 Crosshairs on empty pages ......................... 74
19.19 Font Options ...................................... 74

# 20 Executing Options


# 21 Loading Packages


# 22 Document Layout

22.1 Pagination ......................................... 79
22.2 Paragraphing ...................................... 79
22.3 Page Layout ....................................... 80
  22.3.1 Float placement parameters .................... 80
22.4 Page Styles ....................................... 81
  22.4.1 Marking conventions ............................ 82
  22.4.2 Pagestyle Options .............................. 82
  22.4.3 Defining the page styles ....................... 83
22.5 Blank Page ........................................ 90

# 23 Document Markup

23.1 Hooks ............................................. 91
23.2 Title Page ........................................ 92
  23.2.1 Margins ...................................... 92
23.3 Authorization Form ................................. 97
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>23.4 Parts, Chapters, Sections, Paragraphs etc.</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.4.1 Building blocks</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.4.2 Mark commands</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.4.3 Define Counters</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5 Formatting</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5.1 Fonts and Styles</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5.2 Messages</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5.3 Front Matter, Main Matter, and Back Matter</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5.4 Parts</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5.5 Chapters</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.5.6 Lower level headings</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.6 Lists</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.6.1 General List Parameters</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.6.2 Enumerate</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.6.3 Itemize</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.6.4 Description</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7 Defining new environments</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7.1 Abstract</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7.2 Verse</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7.3 Quotation</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7.4 Quote</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7.5 Theorem</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.7.6 Appendix</td>
<td>113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.8 Setting parameters for existing environments</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.8.1 Array and tabular</td>
<td>114</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.8.2 Tabbing</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.8.3 Minipage</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.8.4 Framed boxes</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.8.5 Equation and eqnarray</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.9 Floating objects</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.9.1 Figure</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.9.2 Table</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.9.3 Captions</td>
<td>117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.10 Font changing</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 Cross Referencing</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.1 Table of Contents, etc.</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.1.1 Table of Contents</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.1.2 List of figures</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.1.3 List of tables</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.2 Bibliography</td>
<td>124</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.3 The index</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.4 Footnotes</td>
<td>127</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25 Initialization
25.1 Words ................................................. 128
25.2 Date ............................................... 129
25.3 Two column mode .................................... 129
25.4 The page style ....................................... 129
25.5 Single or double sided printing ..................... 130
25.6 Single or double spacing ............................ 130

V Flavours: For thesis class maintainers 130

26 UBC: ubcthesis.cls 131
26.1 Identification ....................................... 131
26.2 Options ............................................. 131
26.3 Loading classes and packages ....................... 132
26.4 Title Page .......................................... 132

27 MIT: mitthesis.cls 134
27.1 Identification ....................................... 135
27.2 Initial Code ......................................... 135
27.3 Declaration of Options .............................. 135
27.4 Backwards Compatibility ........................... 135
27.5 Title Page .......................................... 135
27.6 Abstract ............................................ 137

VI Change Log 138
Part I
User Guide

1 Introduction

The ubcthesis class is a package designed for \LaTeXe to aid students in writing theses. This package originated at The University of British Columbia (UBC) in Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada in writing theses that conform the the format requirements of the Faculty of Graduate Studies. It has been redesigned to support thesis formats at various universities.

Support for various universities is provided by additional packages which redefine title pages etc. These hook into the general thesis class and provide university specific formatting. Packages exist for the following institutions:

**UBC:** The University of British Columbia, Vancouver, B.C., Canada.

**MIT:** Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA.

The output of the sample UBC thesis has been approved by the UBC FoGS and this class is presently sanctioned (see section 1.1).

This class is quite general and contains many options. Hopefully, there are enough options so that you will be able to use it to format a thesis at another institution. If not, please let me know so that I may modify it (I will send you an updated version as soon as possible). See also Section 5.

1.1 Disclaimer

The ubcthesis \LaTeX class and the accompanying sample files are unofficial and are not officially supported by any universities. While I have attempted to make the style file and sample files conform to all of the requirements set forth by the respective institutions, you should always consult someone for assistance with problems before starting final draft. Information about the requirements may be gleaned from the following sources:

**UBC:**

- [http://www.grad.ubc.ca/](http://www.grad.ubc.ca/)

**MIT:**

1.2 Versions

**Manual Version:** ubcthesis.dtx v1.72 2015/05/31.
This is the release version of this file.

**HG Version:** Id:c52b4f70ae13, Rev:167, Tag:tip
This is the mercurial version. If no Tag: is present, or it does not match the manual version number above, then this is a development version not suitable for production use. Development versions of this project are maintained at

- [http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis](http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis)

2 Getting Started

This section describes how to get up and running with the ubcthesis class. You should make sure you have all the files, then unpack them and use the sample thesis as a guide to formatting your own thesis.

2.1 Obtaining the ubcthesis package

The ubcthesis package is presently being maintained by Michael McNeil Forbes and you can obtain the latest version from his website:


All the files should be packaged together with this document, however, the only required files are ubcthesis.dtx and ubcthesis.ins. From these, all other files (with the exception of Makefile, README, TODO and the sample figures) can be generated using the \LaTeX program. This is described in Section 2.2. At the end of the day, the only files you actually need are the generic thesis class genthesis.cls and the appropriate flavour class (ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.) but these should not be distributed on their own as they contain no documentation.

If you cannot find the files at the aforementioned site, please try searching at one of the following places:

- [http://www.physics.ubc.ca/computer/ubcthesis.phtml](http://www.physics.ubc.ca/computer/ubcthesis.phtml)

There may also be a reference to the package through the universities listed in Section 1.1.
2.1.1 Bleeding Edge Development Version

The development of this package is hosted at bitbucket:

- [http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis](http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis)

If you would like to help out with the development, this is the place to go, but the versions here should not be used for production: Use the version discussed in the previous section instead.

2.1.2 Files

The complete package should be called `ubcthesis.tgz` or `ubcthesis.tar.gz` or `ubcthesis.zip` or similarly depending on how it is packaged and includes the files:

- **ubcthesis.dtx** This file contains the `genthesis.cls` class as well as the flavours (`ubcthesis.cls`, `mitthesis.cls` etc.) as well as a sample thesis and all of the documentation. It can be processed with \LaTeX{} to generate the documentation (see Section 2.2.1).

- **ubcthesis.ins** This file is a script that unpacks the `ubcthesis.dtx` file. It should be processed with \LaTeX{}.

- **fig.eps** This file is a sample figure for inclusion with the sample theses.

- **fig.fig** This file is the \texttt{xfig} source for the \texttt{fig.eps} file.

- **lyx** This directory contains some tools for using the LyX system (a WYSIWYG \LaTeX{} editing system):

  - [http://www.lyx.org/](http://www.lyx.org/)

  - `lyx/ubcsamplelyx.lyx` This is a sample file for use with LyX.

  Note: this may not be completely in sync with the `ubcsample.tex` file generated by running \texttt{latex ubcthesis.ins} which is the definitive edition. Please scan through that file to make sure that all of the requirements described there are met by your thesis.

  - `lyx/ubcthesis.layout` A simple LyX layout file.

2.2 Installing the ubcthesis package

To install the `ubcthesis` package you must have a working version of \TeX{} installed on your system. The \TeX{} program can then be used to generate the appropriate files and documentation. It is recommended that you copy all the files `ubcthesis.dtx`, `ubcthesis.ins`, `fig.eps` and `fig.fig` to a temporary directory first. The rest of the installation instructions will assume that you have done this.

Alternatively, if you have a version of \texttt{make} on your system, you might be able to use the accompanying \texttt{Makefile} by running
2.2.1 Documentation

To generate the documentation, run the following commands:

```latex
% latex ubcthesis.dtx
% makeindex -s gglo.ist -o ubcthesis.gls ubcthesis.glo
% makeindex -s gind.ist ubcthesis.idx
% latex ubcthesis.dtx
% latex ubcthesis.dtx
%
```

Running \TeX\ three times is required to properly generate the cross-references. The makeindex program generates the index and change logs. This will produce the file `ubcthesis.dvi` which can then be viewed with the `xdvi` program:

```latex
% xdvi ubcthesis.dvi
%
```

In addition, the usual auxiliary \TeX\ files will be produced. These may be discarded. Copy the documentation file `ubcthesis.dvi` to an appropriate location for future references.

2.2.2 Generating the `.cls` class files

To generate the generic class file `genthesis.cls`; flavours (ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc); as well as the sample theses, run \TeX\ once on the `ubcthesis.ins` file:

```latex
% latex ubcthesis.ins
%
```

This will generate the following files:

- `genthesis.cls` This is the generic thesis class which is the basis for all flavours.
- `ubcthesis.cls` This is the `ubcthesis` class file with a decidedly west-coast flavour.
- `mitthesis.cls` This is the `mitthesis` class file with a decidedly east-coast flavour.
- `ubcthesis.drv` This is a driver file used to unpack the other files. It may be safely removed.
- `ubcthesis.log` This is a log of what happened during the unpacking. If you have problems, you might check this, but it may not be easy to read. It may be safely removed.
ubcsample.tex This is the sample thesis file for producing UBC theses.

mitsample.tex This is the sample thesis file for producing MIT theses.

sample.bib This is a sample BIBTeX bibliography database for the sample thesis.

The sample thesis files should be moved to the same directory as the documentation files as they are very useful for someone writing a thesis. These should be used as a template because they conform to the UBC thesis requirements.

2.2.3 Sample Thesis

The sample UBC thesis consists of the files ubcsample.tex and sample.bib. It is setup to conform with the UBC standard and should be used as a template because it specifies the correct order of elements such as the abstract, table of contents etc. It also contains many examples of \LaTeX features. To compile it, use the following commands:

\%
\% latex ubcsample
\% bibtex ubcsample
\% latex ubcsample
\% latex ubcsample
\%

The first time, a list of references will be produced in the file ubcsample.aux. Also, the list of tables ubcsample.lot and list of figures ubcsample.lof will be produced. The BIBTeX program will then use this and the list of bibliographic information in sample.bib to produce a properly formatted bibliography in sample.bib. The final calls to \LaTeX will arrange all the cross-references correctly.

View the sample thesis using xdvi:

\%
\% xdvi ubcsample.dvi
\%

There are additional flavours of thesis conforming to different standards. The mitsample.tex produces a thesis acceptable for use at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology for example.

The actual class file genthesis.cls as well as the desired flavour (ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.) must be installed somewhere that \LaTeX can find. This should be on the TEXINPUTS path. Check with your system administrator for the correct location. It is likely somewhere like:

\%
\% /usr/local/texmf/
\% /opt/local/texTeX/share/
\%

Optionally, you can simply put a copy in the same directory as your thesis.

Be sure that when you distribute your thesis, you also include the genthesis.cls and the appropriate flavour file ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc. (please consider including the entire ubcthesis distribution!) since it is not yet a standard \LaTeX package.
2.3 Using with LyX

You should be able to use the files in the directory `lyx/lyx/ubcthesis.layout` and `lyx.ubcsamplelyx.lyx` files to generate a thesis using LyX:

- [http://www.lyx.org](http://www.lyx.org)

2.3.1 Warning

1. The LyX sample `ubcsamplelyx.lyx` may not be completely in sync with the `ubcsample.tex` file generated by running `latex ubcthesis.ins`. The latter is the definitive edition. Please scan through that file to make sure that all of the requirements described there are met by your thesis. (We are trying to make the two files the same, but this is an outstanding issue.)

2. There is some sort of bug with the `babel` package affecting especially Mac OS X users that leads to the message `! TeX capacity exceeded, sorry...`. Unfortunately, the only way we know to resolve this is to disable the use of `babel` in your LyX preferences. See the following for a discussion and relevant links:

- [http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis/issue/6/lyx-issue](http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis/issue/6/lyx-issue)

3 Writing a Thesis

To begin writing a thesis using the `ubcthesis` class, you should start with the sample thesis as a template. In particular, the sample thesis shows you how order various sections and to ensure that pages are numbered appropriately. In addition, many useful options are demonstrated here. This sections describes how you can use the `ubcthesis` class to accomplish various tasks.

3.1 University Flavour

The first and major option is to select a university flavour to use. This is done by choosing the appropriate class. The following document classes are provided by this package:

- **ubcthesis**: Theses for the University of British Columbia in Vancouver, B.C., Canada.
- **mitthesis**: Theses for the Massachusetts Institute of Technology in Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA.

These select which flavour of university the thesis will be formatted for. These options trigger the generation of specific title pages, etc. required by each university, as well as
3.2 Page Style

You may wish to change the way that you pages look in your thesis. This section describes how to do this.

3.2.1 Headers and Footers

The terms “headers” and “footers” refer to text that appears at the top and bottom of the page. The norunningheaders option can be used to suppress the display of a header, and the noheadline option can be used to suppress the line drawn under the header.

To further customize the appearance of the headers and footers, use the fancyhdr package. This gives you much more control over the headers. See the documentation supplied with the fancyhdr package for more details.

If you do decide to define your own headers, be careful about page numbering: you may need to explicitly include a page number in your header to ensure that each page is numbered.

3.3 Class Options

Most of the behaviours of the genthesis class are controlled through flags that are set in the \documentclass[\{ubcthesi\} or \documentclass[\{mitthesis\} statement that occurs at the start of your document. Options are specified in the square brackets, for example the ubcsample.tex sample file uses the options msc and oneside.

Options usually appear in pairs that enable or disable a feature. As the genthesis class was derived from the standard book class, many of the options are still supported. In this section we describe all options that are different from the standard LATEX book class and a few of the relevant options that have been maintained. The default option values for the genthesis class are underlined. Note: the default options vary depending on the flavour of the class. See the corresponding sections in Part V.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>draft/final</td>
<td>These toggle between draft and final modes. Use the final mode for submission. Note: in the draft version, graphics are not necessarily displayed depending on the graphics package you use. Additionally, the draft mode places black boxes to the right of lines that are too long, making it easy to visually note the places where LATEX has difficulty formatting the text properly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10pt/11pt/12pt</td>
<td>Sets the font size.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oneside/twoside</td>
<td>Single verses double sided. This just offsets the pages: you must specify to print (for example, use the command lpr -Zsimplex ... for one side or lpr -Zduplex ... for two). If you are handing in your thesis single sided (the current requirement) then be sure to use the oneside option.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Sets the location of the page number: Top Right, Bottom Center, and Bottom Right respectively (Right means outside edge for twoside format).

Upper case chapters and part headings.

Upper case in the table of contents.

Italicize chapter titles (for non-main matter) in table of contents.

Display “Chapter #” before chapter titles in the main matter of the thesis.

Toggles the display of the numbers in chapter headings.

Sets the style. Sets degree title to "DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY", "MASTER OF SCIENCE" etc. in the title page. The number of signature lines is also changed.

Specifies that the appendices should be treated as a numbered part of the document. Otherwise, the appendices are simply announced in the table of contents and the chapter numbering is changed to lettering.

Puts a page separator between the main body and the start of the appendices. Has no effect if the option "appendixpart" is specified since parts are already separated by a separate page.

Puts a dividing line with \appendicesname in the table of contents before the appendices.

These options determine whether or not figure and table captions should “hang”. Hanging captions are justified so that all the caption text comes after the caption label.

These display or suppress running headers that contain the current chapter name and number. If they are suppressed, only the page number will be displayed.

These display or suppress a horizontal line running under the headers at the top of the page.

These toggle between crosshair and nocrosshair modes. The crosshair mode puts a large X on empty pages. (Pages with pagestyle empty).
committee

Use this option when producing the version to send to your thesis committee if they want the document with 1.5 spacing so there is some room for comments between the lines. You may change the spacing by redefining the \committeespacing command in the preamble (before the \begin{document} command). The following command would give double spacing for example.

\%\ renewcommand{\committeespacing}{2}
\%

chapternotereset/nochapternotereset These options specify whether or not the footnote counter should be reset each chapter or not.

bibnum/nobibnum Specify whether or not to Number the bibliography chapter (or section if sectionbib is used) if it is in the mainmatter.

sectionbib Treat the bibliography as a section rather than a chapter.

starmark/nostarmark This option provides for a departure from the standard class marking mechanism that causes the starred version of \chapter*, \section* etc. commands to call \chapterstarmark, \sectionstarmark etc. This allows these to reset the markings without the user explicitly having to include this.

4 Interface Guidelines

This section lists all of the commands supported by the general thesis class. These commands and options should be supported by all flavours, but additional commands may be defined for specific flavours. In a sense, this defines the interface to the thesis class. If you use only these commands or options, then you should be able to choose any flavour without modifying your thesis.

4.1 Options

10pt 11pt 12pt a4paper a5paper appendixpage appendixpart appendicestoc bibnum b5paper bold centerheadline
centerheads chapterheads chapternotereset committee crosshair defaultfonts draft executivepaper final fleqn hangingcaptions headcount
4.2 Counters

chapter
figure
paragraph
part
section

4.3 Lengths

subparagraph
subsection
subsubsection
table
4.4 Commands

\Lcount \degree
\Lopt \department
\abstractfont \descriptionlabel
\abstractname \draftname
\appendicesname \examplefont
\appendixname \facultyfont
\appendix \faculty
\authorfont \figurefont
\authorizationform \figurename
\backmatter \file
\bibname \frontmatter
\bibsize \headingstextfont
\captionbodyfont \indexname
\captionheaderfont \indexsize
\chapterauthorfont \indexespace
\chapterfont \institutionaddress
\chaptermark \institutionfont
\chaptername \institution
\chapterstarmark \itemfont
\chapterstarmark \itemfont
\chapertitlefont \labelenumiii
\chapter \labelenumiv
\committeespacing \labelenumi
\contentsname \labelenumii
\copyrightnotice \labelitemiii
\copyrightyear \labelitemii
\degreetitlefont \labelitemiv
\degreetitle \labelitemi
5 Contributions

While this class attempts to conform to the requirements of UBC, I have attempted to make it very general so that it will be of use for anyone writing a thesis. In particular, I have included many options that can be changed to meet the specific requirements of a given university. Ultimately, I would like to include several “global options” that would change the format to conform with various universities. These would work in much the same way that the various Font Options (see Section 19.19): each global option would set a bunch of options and variables to make the style conform to the universities requirements.

An additional type of modification would be to add a variety of title page formats (see Section 23.2). There are also many features that could be added which I have not had the time to research and implement. One would be an easy method for including custom counters (such as provided by figures and equations). One specific request is for a “Scheme” counter which would count chemical schemes or formula. This would allow users to produce a “List of Schemes” much as a list of tables and list of figures is currently produced. See Section 6 for a list of tasks.
I would appreciate any feedback, including comments, suggestions, modifications etc. In particular, I would like to know of any features that you require that are not available with the current set of options. Also, if you have a font scheme that looks good, please let me know so that I can include it (I have not spent a whole lot of time thinking about the beast choice of layout as I have had a thesis to write too!)

Michael McNeil Forbes mforbes@physics.ubc.ca

6 To Do (including bugs)

Layout and Design Consider using the \texttt{memoir} class which provides many different styling options.

Spacing Options Options should be provided, at least for the UBC sample to make the document 1.5 spaced as this may now required by the FoGS.

Update Font Options The default font options look okay, but the others (slanted for example) look pretty bad. These should be updated.

Figure Fonts Add a command to allow for different fonts in figure environments. This would allow for different fonts to be selected for psfrag for example.

Custom Lists Currently, counters are provided for Figures and for Tables that are recorded in .lof and .lot files respectively for later inclusion in a List of Figures via the \texttt{\listoffigures} command and \texttt{\listoftables} commands respectively. I would like to provide a way for the user to define custom counters and similar tables for various other types of lists. In particular, a request has been made for a “List of Schemes” allowing chemists to list chemical formulae.

One easy way of doing this would be to provide a set of a fixed number of lists (perhaps with associated files .lo1, .lo2, ..., .lo9) that the user can use and provide customized titles. A better way would probably allow the number to be flexible.

Wide Text A small environment should be made which allows equations or other elements to be inserted which extend beyond the width of the text for occasional equations etc. that are long. This should justify the wide text properly and center it on the page (possibly including an option for the width of the box and options for flush left, right etc. with the box centered on the page).

Indices I have never worked with indices, so I have no comments on how to do this (nor have I designed the package with this in mind). Many people would probably like to include an index, and so I should include instructions on how to. I will when I figure it out...

Proper Placement of Commands In order to ensure that the \texttt{ubcthesis} class works well with other packages, it should be more careful about where various code elements are placed.
hyperlref Package There are problems with the hyperref package and index entries when producing the documentation. There was also a problem with hyperref in the actual class with the table of contents, but this has been resolved. In the future note that one must be careful where one converts things to upper case: doing so where the toc was written created problems with the hyper-link information. Now the conversion happens before the hyper-links are added.

When this is fixed, include the index and instructions on how to make the index.

Section Numbering The \@headingalignment command affects something adversely, but I cannot remember what. This should be tested and the bug fixed.

Draft Headers The Headers in draft mode should still have the page numbers on the right hand side. There is a discrepancy between the abstract page etc. and the rest of the document.

Magic Numbers Many of these have been replaced, but there are still many magic numbers that should be replaced by modifiable constants.

Title Pages Fix titlepage error messages to be a bit nicer.

Logo Copy Remove redundancy in the \@logocopy text. The present code is a bit of a hack and duplicates data.

Page Numbering Make the page numbering scheme more flexible. In particular, consider suppressing the counting of certain pages (such as the authorization form) rather than hard setting the numbers.

Lettered Figures Add options for lettered figures.

Table Of Contents If there are a very large number of sections, then the numbers in the toc become large than the space allocated for them. (For an example of this, see the table of contents for this file!) Ideally, when running, the size of the maximum label should be calculated and this used to set the spacing. This could be sent to the .aux file or possibly computed ahead of time.

Page Breaks Add ability to break pages in weird locations. (See Darren Peets class).

Chapter Headlines The first page of a chapter now returns to the pagestyle plain which is the default behaviour for the LATEX classes. An option should be added which allows one to customize the chapter page style to give the option of running headers as before.

Running Header “Section” Marks Right now the running headers show only the current chapter. The code is in place to changed the marks so that they
show the current section as well, but this should be made as an optional change, not the default. Proper options should be provided (in the form of a counter like \texttt{tocdepth} and \texttt{secnumdepth}) which allow the user or flavour to customize this.

**Draft Mode** It might be useful to have a draft mode which includes graphics (because this also includes the current date). Also, if it does not break anything, a SVN revision number should be included in the draft header as well. Draft mode might also force a header onto every page.

**Change Log Ordering/Index** Presently the change log is not sorted very well in that version 1.2 is really below 1.12. The former should probably be changed to 1.02 etc. Also, the styles etc. should be updated, and the calls to \texttt{makeindex} should somehow be automated if possible. Finally, the index should actually link to the pages if possible (with hyperref?) so that modern version of xdvi etc. will allow you to click and go to the relevant pages.

**LyX bable issue** On some systems (esp. Mac OS X) there is some problem with the bable package that causes \LaTeX{} to emit an error:

\begin{verbatim}
%! TeX capacity exceeded, sorry...
%
\end{verbatim}


**Synchronize LyX Files** Presently the LyX sample file \texttt{ubcsamplelyx.lyx} must be kept in sync manually with the generated \texttt{ubcsample.tex} file. It would be good if these could both be generated from the same source to keep both up to date automatically. See:

• [http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis/issue/7/lyx-sample-ubcsampletex](http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis/issue/7/lyx-sample-ubcsampletex)

**Complete LyX Layout** If someone would like to generate a proper LyX layout file that includes all of the options present in the ubcthesis class, then please submit one to:


If there are any other features or bugs you would like to see, please let me know (see Section 5).

7 Acknowledgements

This class was derived from \texttt{classes.dtx} Version 2001/04/21 v1.4e which is part of the \LaTeX{} base system. The original file is available from

• [http://www.ctan.org](http://www.ctan.org)

For information on the \LaTeX{} project, see
Additional modifications we incorporated from the thesis.cls file by Wenzel Matiaska. The incorporations were made from Version 1996/25/01 1.0g. The thesis.cls and thesis.dtx distribution is available from.

I would like to especially thank the following people for contributions:

- Darren Peets for helping debug the class and offering many useful suggestions.
- James P. Zibin for suggesting the fix for the header overflow bug.
- Christopher Dutchyn for pointing out that the \chaptertoc and related commands were redundant, that the \preface and \acknowledgements commands were ugly, for suggesting various useful packages to include in the sample theses for typesetting program code, and for supplying various corrections (denoted throughout by (CD)).
- Max Read for making suggestion to bring the UBC portion into alignment with the current FoGS requirements.
- Joseph Tam for implementing most of Max Reads requests.
- Abhishek Gupta for pointing out the bibliography running header bug.
- Murray McCutcheon for pointing out the spacing bug, the topmargin bug and the pagenumTR header bug.
- Chris Michalak for suggesting the openrightblank option.
- Valentin Koch for pointing out the first blank page bug.
- Adrian Cortes for point out the Bibliography heading bug.
- Joseph Shea for suggesting the use of the pdflscape package.
- Steve Yohanan for pointing out the issue with babel resetting \contentsname.
- Mike Lindstrom for pointing out some issues with the table of contents.

8 Description of the files

From here on, this document describes the actual source files produced line by line. The following files are described:

ubcthesis.drv  This is the documentation driver file that produces the documentation (which you are probably reading). This must come first because it includes the \documentclass statement for this file.
ubcsample.tex This is the sample UBC thesis. Use this file as a template for your UBC thesis.

mitsample.tex This is the sample MIT thesis. Use this file as a template for your MIT thesis.

sample.bib This is a sample bibliography database (in BIBTeX format) to show you how to use one.

genthesis.cls This is the generic thesis genthesis \LaTeX2e class file. Look here for specific details about the class, especially if you want to modify or contribute to it.

ubcthesis.cls This is the UBC flavour of thesis. It requires genthesis.cls. Look here for specific details about UBC formatting options. If you need to make specific UBC customizations, they should be done in this file if possible.

mitthesis.cls This is the MIT flavour of thesis. It requires genthesis.cls. Look here for specific details about MIT formatting options. If you need to make specific MIT customizations, they should be done in this file if possible.

8.1 The docstrip modules

The following modules are used in the implementation to direct DOCSTRIP in generating the external files:

- genthesis produce the documentclass genthesis
- ubcthesis produce the documentclass ubcthesis
- mitthesis produce the documentclass mitthesis
- ubcsampletex produce the sample UBC \LaTeX file
- mitsampletex produce the sample UBC \LaTeX file
- samplebib produce the sample BIBTeX file
- driver produce a documentation driver file
Part II
Documentation Driver

This bit of code contains the documentation driver file for \LaTeX, i.e., the file that will produce the documentation you are currently reading. Note that the file \texttt{ubcthesis.drv} need not actually be generated: \texttt{docstrip} will process this directly and typeset this documentation.

We also define here the document class and formatting information for typesetting the documentation. This is not essential for using or modifying the thesis classes, but must appear here because it defines the formatting required to format this document. The first uncommented \texttt{\documentclass} command is interpreted as the one that specifies how to typeset the documentation.

Here is the comment that tells \texttt{docstrip} to put the rest of the code into \texttt{ubcthesis.drv}. Again, this need not actually be generated and is not generated as part of the standard distribution.

\begin{verbatim}
1 ⟨∗driver⟩

9 Identification
This section identifies the version of the file. It also indicates which version of \LaTeX\ (\LaTeXe) is required and makes sure that an appropriate message is displayed when another \LaTeX\ format is used.

\begin{verbatim}
2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1995/12/01]
3 \ProvidesFile{ubcthesis.drv}[2015/05/31 v1.72 ^^J
4 University of British Columbia Thesis Class Documentation Driver]
\end{verbatim}

10 Document Class
Now we specify the document class to use the \texttt{ltxdoc.cls} file. This will format the documentation appropriately. This must be the first uncommented \texttt{\documentclass} command in the file which is why the driver must come first.

\begin{verbatim}
5 \documentclass{ltxdoc}

We also use the \texttt{hyperref} package to allow point and click linking within the document. There are some problems with the index however. We use the \texttt{linktocpage} option to allow long table of content entries to wrap.

\begin{verbatim}
6 \IfFileExists{hyperref.sty}{{
7 \usepackage[linktocpage, linkbordercolor={0.5 0.5 1}, citebordercolor={0.5 1 0.5}, linkcolor=blue}{hyperref}}}
11 \usepackage{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}
\end{verbatim}

23
We do want an index, using line numbers
12 % Uncomment these lines to make an index and a change log in the
documentation.
13 %
14 \AtBeginDocument{\CodelineIndex\EnableCrossrefs}
15 \AtBeginDocument{\RecordChanges}
16 %\OnlyDescription % Uncomment this to suppress description of files.
The following command retrieves the date and version information from the file.
17 \GetFileInfo{ubcthesis.drv}

Some commonly used abbreviations
18 \newcommand*{\Lopt}[1]{\textsf{#1}}
19 \newcommand*{\file}[1]{\texttt{#1}}
20 \newcommand*{\Lclass}[1]{\texttt{#1}}
21 \newcommand*{\Lcount}[1]{\textsl{\small#1}}
22 \newcommand*{\pstyle}[1]{\textsl{#1}}
23 \newcommand*{\prog}[1]{\textsc{#1}}

We also want the full details.
24 \begin{document}
25 \DocInput{ubcthesis.dtx}

\section{End of Document}

26 \end{document}

Finally, we close off the driver file so that nothing else is put into the documenta-
tion driver.
27 ⟨/driver⟩

\part{Sample Theses}

This section presents the code for the sample thesis with comments. If you add
a new flavour, please include a sample thesis here to show users how to use your
flavour.

In the spirit of \LaTeX, we try not to impose restrictions on the layout in the
actual thesis class. Instead, restrictions posed by the university should be clearly
spelled out in the sample files. Thus, these templates are an important part of a
complete distribution.

\section{Sample UBC Thesis}

This is a thesis conforming to the University of British Columbia guidelines.
Here is the comment that tells DOCSTRIP to put the following code into ubcsample.tex.

1 ⟨∗ubcsampletex⟩

12.1 Identification

This section identifies the version of the file. It also indicates which version of \LaTeX (\LaTeX \textsc{2}\textsc{e}) is required and makes sure that an appropriate message is displayed when another \TeX format is used.

2 \%
3 This Sample thesis requires \LaTeX\textsc{2}\textsc{e}
4 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1995/12/01]

Now we announce the file or class name and its version:

4 \ProvidesFile{ubcsample.tex}[2015/05/31 v1.72 ^^J
5 University of British Columbia Sample Thesis]

12.2 Document Structure

This section describes the structure that your \LaTeX document must have. Various sections of the sample code will be presented to illustrate this structure though the sample file ubcsample.tex does not contain all of the options and features.

The first section of a \LaTeX document contains information about the structure of the document. This is called the document preamble.

Usually the first command is the \documentclass command which specifies the class to use and the options to the class

6 \%
7 This is the \documentclass{} command. The mandatory argument
8 \%
9 specifies the "flavour" of thesis (ubcthesis for UBC). The
10 \%
11 optional arguments (in []) specify options that affect how the
12 \%
13 thesis is displayed. Please see the ubcthesis documentation for
14 \%
15 details about the options.
16 \documentclass[msc,oneside]{ubcthesis}
17
18 \%
19 To compile this sample thesis, issue the following commands:
20 \%
21 latex ubcsample
22 bibtex ubcsample
23 latex ubcsample
24 latex ubcsample
25 latex ubcsample
26
27 \%
28 To view use xdvi (on unix systems):
29 xdvi ubcsample.dvi
30
31 \%
32 To make a postscript file, use dvips:
33 dvips -o ubcsample.ps ubcsample.dvi
34
35 \%
36 To view the postscript file, use ghostview or gv (on unix systems):
37 gv ubcsample.ps
Optional packages.
The use of these packages is optional, but they provide various tools for more flexible formatting. The sample thesis uses these, but if you remove the example code, you should be able to exclude these packages. Only standard packages have been described here; they should be installed with any complete LaTeX installation, but if not, you can find them at the Comprehensive TeX Archive Network (CTAN): http://www.ctan.org/

afterpage
This package allows you to issue commands at the end of the current page. A good use for this is to use the command \afterpage{\clearpage} right after a figure. This will cause the figure to be inserted on the page following the current one (or on the current page if it will fit) but will not break the page in the middle.
\usepackage{afterpage}

float
This package allows you to customize the style of "floats"—floating objects such as figures and tables. In addition, it allows you to define additional floating objects which may be included in a list similar to that produces by \listoftables and \listoffigures. Common uses include introducing floats for programs and other code bits in Computer Science and Chemical Schema.
\usepackage{float}

tocloft
This package allows you to customize and define custom lists such as a list of programs or Chemical Scheme. Note: if you use the subfigure package, you must specify that you do as an option here. The title option uses the default formatting. We do not use this here as the default formatting is acceptable. Use the float package instead unless you need the extra formatting control provided by tocloft.
\usepackage[subfigure, titles]{tocloft}

alltt
The alltt package allows you to include files and have them formatted in a verbatim fashion. This is useful for including source code from an additional file.
\usepackage{alltt}

listings
The listings package may be used to include chunks of source code and has facilities for pretty-printing many languages.
\usepackage{listings}

\begin{longtable}
\\end{longtable}

\usepackage{longtable}

\begin{itemize}
    \item graphics and graphicx
        \begin{itemize}
            \item This allows you to include encapsulated postscript files. If you don't have this, comment the \texttt{\includegraphics} line following the \texttt{\%includegraphics} later in this file.
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\usepackage{graphicx}

\begin{itemize}
    \item subfigure
        \begin{itemize}
            \item The subfigure package allows you to include multiple figures and captions within a single figure environment.
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\usepackage{subfigure}

\begin{itemize}
    \item here
        \begin{itemize}
            \item The here package gives you more control over the placement of figures and tables. In particular, you can specify the placement "H" which means "Put the figure here" rather than \[h\] which means "I would suggest that you put the figure here if you think it looks good."
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\usepackage{here}

\begin{itemize}
    \item pdflscape
        \begin{itemize}
            \item This allows you to include landscape layout pages by using the |landscape| environment. The use of |pdflscape| is preferred over the standard |lscape| package because it automatically rotates the page in the pdf file for easier reading. (Thanks to Joseph Shea for pointing this out.)
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\usepackage{pdflscape}

\begin{itemize}
    \item natbib
        \begin{itemize}
            \item This is a very nice package for bibliographies. It includes options for sorting and compressing bibliographic entries.
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\usepackage[numbers,sort&compress]{natbib}

\begin{itemize}
    \item psfrag
        \begin{itemize}
            \item This allows you to replace text in postscript pictures with formatted latex text. This allows you to use math in graph labels etc. Uncomment the psfrag lines following the "%psfrag" comment later in this file if you don't have this package. The replacements will only be visible in the final postscript file: they will be listed in the .dvi file but not performed.
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\usepackage{psfrag}

\begin{itemize}
    \item hyperref
        \begin{itemize}
            \item Please read the manual:
        \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
This adds hyperlinks to your document: with the right viewers (later versions of xdvi, acrobat with pdftex, latex2html etc.) this will make your equation, figure, citation references etc. hyperlinks so that you can click on them. Also, your table of contents will be able to take you to the appropriate sections. In the viewers that support this, the links often appear with an underscore. This underscore will not appear in printed versions.

Note: if you do not use the hypertex option, then the dvips driver may be loaded by default. This will cause the entries in the list of figures and list of tables to be on a single line because dvips does not deal with hyperlinks on broken lines properly.

NOTE: HYPERREF is sensitive to the ORDER in which it is LOADED. For example, it must be loaded AFTER natbib but BEFORE newly defined float environments. See the README file with the hyperref for some help with this. If you have some very obscure errors, try first disabling hyperref. If that fixes the problem, try various orderings.

Note also that there is a bug with versions before 2003/11/30 v6.74m that cause the float package to not function correctly. Please ensure you have a current version of this package. A warning will be issued if you leave the date below but do not have a current version installed.

Some notes on options: depending on how you build your files, you may need to choose the appropriate option (such as [pdftex]) for the backend driver (see the hyperref manual for a complete list). Also, the default here is to make links from the page numbers in the table of contents and lists of figures etc. There are other options: excluding the [linktocpage] option will make the entire text a hyperref, but for some backends will prevent the text from wrapping which can look terrible. There is a [breaklinks=true] option that will be set if the backend supports (dvipdfm for example supports it but does not work with psfrag.)

Finally, there are many options for choosing the colours of the links. These will be included by default in future versions but you should probably consider changing some now for the electronic version of your thesis.

\usepackage[unicode=true, linktocpage, linkbordercolor={0.5 0.5 1}, citebordercolor={0.5 1 0.5}, linkcolor=blue]{hyperref}

If you would like to compile this sample thesis without the
\% hyperref package, then you will need to comment out the previous
\% \usepackage command and uncomment the following command which will
\% put the URL's in a typewriter font but not link them.
\% \newcommand\url[1]{\texttt{#1}}
\%

\%******** setspace ***********************
\% The setspace package allows you to manually set the spacing of the
\% file. UBC may require 1.5 spacing for microfilming of theses. In
\% this case you may obtain this by including this package and issuing
\% one of the following commands:
\% \usepackage{setspace}
\% \singlespacing
\% \onehalfspacing
\% \doublespacing
\%
\% These commands are optional. The defaults are shown. You only
\% need to include them if you need a different value
\% \institution{The University Of British Columbia}
\%
\% If you are at the Okanagan campus, then you should specify these
\% instead.
\% \faculty{The College of Graduate Studies}
\% \institutionaddress{Okanagan}
\% \faculty{The Faculty of Graduate Studies}
\% \institutionaddress{Vancouver}
\%
\% You can issue as many of these as you have...
\% \previousdegree{B.Sc., The University of British Columbia, 1999}
\% \previousdegree{M.Sc., The University of British Columbia, 2001}
\% \previousdegree{Ph.D., Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 2005}
\%
\% You can override the option setting here.
\% \degreetitle{Jack of All Trades}
\%
\% These commands are required.
\% \title{A Sample UBC Thesis}
\% \subtitle{With a Subtitle}
\% \author{Michael M$^\text{c}$Neil Forbes}
\% \copyrightyear{2000}
\% \submitdate{\monthname \number\year} \% The "\ " is required after
\% \monthname to prevent the
\% \ command from eating the space.
\% \program{Physics}
\%
\% These commands are presently not required for UBC theses as the
\% advisor's name and title are not presently required anywhere.
\% \advisor{Ariel R.~Zhitnitsky}
\% \advisortitle{Professor of Physics}
\%
12.2.1 Chapter and section counter formats

For any counter \textit{CTR}, \texttt{\thetheCTR} is a macro that defines the printed version of counter \textit{CTR}. It is defined in terms of the following macros:

- \texttt{\arabic{COUNTER}} prints the value of \textit{COUNTER} as an Arabic numeral.
- \texttt{\roman{COUNTER}} prints the value of \textit{COUNTER} as a lowercase Roman numeral.
- \texttt{\Roman{COUNTER}} prints the value of \textit{COUNTER} as an uppercase Roman numeral.
- \texttt{\alph{COUNTER}} prints the value of \textit{COUNTER} as a lowercase letter: 1 = a, 2 = b, etc.
- \texttt{\Alph{COUNTER}} prints the value of \textit{COUNTER} as an uppercase letter: 1 = A, 2 = B, etc.

This section of the sample class redefines these (actually, the redefinitions match the defaults so this would be pointless in the actual thesis, but is here for demonstration purposes.)

\begin{verbatim}
\renewcommand\thepart {\Roman{part}}
\renewcommand\thechapter {\arabic{chapter}}
\renewcommand\thesection {\thechapter.\arabic{section}}
\renewcommand\thesubsection {\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}
\renewcommand\thesubsubsection {\thesubsection.\arabic{subsubsection}}
\renewcommand\theparagraph {\thesubsubsection.\arabic{paragraph}}
\renewcommand\thesubparagraph {\theparagraph.\arabic{subparagraph}}
\end{verbatim}

The section and lower commands also display the numbers of higher sections too and a punctuation mark. These show you how to change these. (Again, the formats actually given here are the defaults.)

\begin{verbatim}
\setcounter{tocdepth}{2}
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{2}
\end{verbatim}

Two related counters control the level of sections that are numbered and the level of sections included in the table of contents:

\begin{verbatim}
\setcounter{tocdepth}{2}
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{2}
\end{verbatim}

Here is an example of a "Program" environment defined with the \texttt{float} package. The list of programs will be stored in the file \texttt{ubcsample.lop} and the numbering will start with the chapter number. The style will be "ruled".

\begin{verbatim}
\floatstyle{ruled}
\newfloat{Program}{htbp}{lop}[chapter]
\end{verbatim}

Here is the start of the document.

\begin{verbatim}
\begin{document}
\end{verbatim}
This starts numbering in Roman numerals as required for the thesis style and is mandatory.

\frontmatter

The order of the following components should be preserved. The order listed here is the order currently required by FoGS:

\begin{itemize}
\item Title (Mandatory)
\item Preface (Mandatory if any collaborator contributions)
\item Abstract (Mandatory)
\item List of Contents, Tables, Figures, etc. (As appropriate)
\item Acknowledgements (Optional)
\item Dedication (Optional)
\end{itemize}

\maketitle \begin{abstract} \LaTeX{} class file and accompanying documents, such as this sample thesis, are distributed in the hope that it will be useful but without any warranty (without even the implied warranty of fitness for a particular purpose). For a description of this file’s purpose, and instructions on its use, see below.

These files are distributed under the GPL which should be included here in the future. Please let the author know of any changes or improvements that should be made.

Michael Forbes. mforbes@physics.ubc.ca
\end{abstract}

\chapter{Preface} You must include a preface if any part of your research was partly or wholly published in articles, was part of a collaboration, or required the approval of UBC Research Ethics Boards.

The Preface must include the following:

\begin{itemize}
\item A statement indicating the relative contributions of all collaborators and co-authors of publications (if any), emphasizing details of your contribution, and stating the proportion of research and writing conducted by you.
\item A list of any publications arising from work presented in the dissertation, and the chapter(s) in which the work is located.
\item The name of the particular UBC Research Ethics Board, and the Certificate Number(s) of the Ethics Certificate(s) obtained, if ethics approval was required for the research.
\end{itemize}
Sections and subsections etc. in the Preface should in general not be listed in the table of contents, so use the starred form of \section etc.

\section*{Examples}

Chapter \ref{cha:apple_ref} is based on work conducted in UBC's Maple Syrup Laboratory by Dr. A. Apple, Professor B. Boat, and Michael McNeil Forbes. I was responsible for tapping the trees in forests X and Z, conducted and supervised all boiling operations, and performed frequent quality control tests on the product.

A version of chapter \ref{cha:apple_ref} has been published \cite{Apple:2010}. I conducted all the testing and wrote most of the manuscript. The section on ‘‘Testing Implements’’ was originally drafted by Boat, B. Check the first pages of this chapter to see footnotes with similar information.

Note that this preface must come before the table of contents. Note also that this section ‘‘Examples’’ should not be listed in the table of contents, so we have used the starred form: \verb|\section*{Example}|.

\tableofcontents    \% Mandatory
\listoftables      \% Mandatory if thesis has tables
\listoffigures    \% Mandatory if thesis has figures
\listof{Program}{List of Programs} \% Optional
\chapter{Acknowledgements} \% Optional
This is the place to thank professional colleagues and people who have given you the most help during the course of your graduate work.

\chapter{Dedication} \% Optional
The dedication is usually quite short, and is a personal rather than an academic recognition. The \emph{Dedication} does not have to be titled, but it must appear in the table of contents. If you want to skip the chapter title but still enter it into the Table of Contents, use this command \verb|\chapter[\textemdash]{Dedication}|{}.

Note that this section is the last of the preliminary pages (with lowercase Roman numeral page numbers). It must be placed \emph{before} the \verb|\mainmatter| command. After that, Arabic numbered pages will begin.

Any other unusual prefactory material should come here before the main body.

Now regular page numbering begins.
\mainmatter
Parts are the largest structural units, but are optional.

\part{Thesis}

Chapters are the next main unit.

\chapter{This is a Chapter}

Sections are a sub-unit

\section{A Section}

Here is a section with some text. Equations look like this

\[ y=x. \]

This is an example of a second paragraph in a section so you can see how much it is indented by.

Subsections follow

\subsection{This is a Subsection}

Here is an example of a citation: \cite{Forbes:2006ba}. The actual form of the citation is governed by the bibliography style. These citations are maintained in a BIBTeX file \texttt{sample.bib}. You could type these directly into the file. For an example of the format to use look at the file \texttt{ubcsample.bbl} after you compile this file.\footnote{Here is another footnote.}

This is an example of a second paragraph in a subsection so you can see how much it is indented by.

Subsubsections follow

\subsubsection{This is a Subsubsection}

Here are some more citations \cite{LL3:1977,Peccei:1989,Turner:1999}. If you use the \texttt{natbib} package with the \verb+sort&compress+ option, then the following citation will look the same as the first citation in this section: \cite{Turner:1999,Peccei:1989,LL3:1977}.

This is an example of a second paragraph in a subsubsection so you can see how much it is indented by.

Paragraphs and subparagraphs are the smallest units of text. There is no subsubparagraph etc.

\paragraph{This is a Paragraph}

This is the last level of organisation. If you need more than this, you should consider reorganizing your work\dots

\begin{equation}
\mathrm{f}(x)=\int_{-\infty}^{x}e^{-\frac{y^2}{2}}\mathrm{d}y\int_{-\infty}^{z}e^{-z^2}\mathrm{d}z
\end{equation}

In order to show you what a separate page would look like (i.e. without a chapter heading) I must type some more text. Thus I will babble a
bit and keep babbling for at least one more page\ldots What you
should notice is that the chapter titles appear substantially lower
than the continuing text. Babble babble
\begin{tabular}{|r||r@{.}l|}
\hline
Phoenix & \$960&35 \\
\hline
Calgary & \$250&00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption[Here is the caption for this wonderful table\ldots]{
Here is the caption for this wonderful table. It has not been
centered and the positioning has been specified to be at the top
of the page. Thus it appears above the babble rather than below
where it is defined in the source file.}
\label{tab:Table1}
\end{table}

%% Force a new page: without this, the quote would appear on the
%% previous page.
\newpage
\section{Quote}
Here is a quote:
\begin{quote}
% It is centered
\begin{center}
This is a small poem,\ \\
a little poem, a Haiku,\ \\
to show you how to.\ \\
\end{center}
\end{quote}
This small poem shows several features:
\begin{itemize}
\item The use of the \verb|quote| and \verb|center| environments.
\item The \verb|\newpage| command has been used to force a page break. (Sections do not usually start on a new page.)
\item The pagemode has been set to suppress the headers using the \verb|\thispagestyle{plain}| command. Note that using \verb|\pagestyle{plain}| would have affected all of the subsequent pages.
\end{itemize}

\section{Programs}
Here we give an example of a new float as defined using the \texttt{float} package. In the preamble we have used the commands
\begin{verbatim}
\floatstyle{ruled}
\newfloat{Program}{htbp}{lop}\[chapter]
\end{verbatim}
This creates a "Program" environment that may be used for program fragments. A sample \texttt{python} program is shown in Program~\ref{prog:fib}. (Note that Python places a fairly restrictive limit on recursion so trying to call this with a large $n$ before building up the cache is likely to fail unless you increase the recursion depth.)
\begin{Program}
\caption{Python program that computes the $n^{\text{th}}$ Fibonacci number using memoization.}
\begin{verbatim}
def fib(n,_cache={}):
    if n < 2:
        return 1
    if n in _cache:
        return _cache[n]
    else:
        result = fib(n-1)+fib(n-2)
        _cache[n] = result
    return result
\end{verbatim}
\end{Program}
Instead of using a \texttt{verbatim} environment for your program chunks, you might like to \texttt{include} them within an \texttt{alltt} environment by including the \verb|\usepackage{alltt}| package (see page 187 of the \LaTeX{} book). Another useful package is the \verb|\usepackage{listings}| which can pretty-print many different types of source code.

% Force a new page
Here we provide a short optional argument to \chapter{}{}. This optional argument will appear in the table of contents. For long titles, one should use this to give a single-line entry to the table of contents.

\chapter[Another Chapter\ldots]{Another Chapter with a Very Long Chapter-name that will Probably Cause Problems}
\label{cha:apple_ref}

This chapter name is very long and does not display properly in the running headers or in the table of contents. To deal with this, we provide a shorter version of the title as the optional argument to the \verb|\chapter[{}]| command.

For example, this chapter's title and associated table of contents heading and running header was created with\verb|\chapter[Another Chapter\ldots]{Another Chapter with a Very Long Chapter-name that will Probably Cause Problems}|.

Note that, according to the thesis regulations, the heading included in the table of contents must be a truncation of the actual heading.

This Chapter was used as a demonstration in the Preface for how to attribute contribution from collaborators. If there are any such contributions, details must be included in the Preface. If you wish, you may additionally use a footnote such as this.
\footnote{This chapter is based on work conducted in UBC's Maple Syrup Laboratory by Dr. A. Apple, Professor B. Boat, and C. Cat.}

\section{Another Section}
Another bunch of text to demonstrate what this file does. You might want a list for example:\footnote{Here is a footnote in a different chapter. Footnotes should come after punctuation.}
\begin{itemize}
\item An item in a list.
\item Another item in a list.
\end{itemize}

\section*{An Unnumbered Section That is Not Included in the Table of Contents}
\begin{figure}
\begin{center}
% psfrag: comment the following line if not using the psfrag package
\psfrag{pie makes me happy!}{$\pi$ makes me happy!}
% includegraphics: comment the following if not using the graphicx package
% includegraphics[width=0.4\textwidth]{fig}
\caption{Happy Face: figure example.} \label{fig:happy} This is a figure of a happy face with a \verb|\psfrag| replacement. The original figure (drawn in xfig and exported to a .eps file) has the text ‘‘pie makes me
happy!’’. The \texttt{psfrag} package replaces this with ‘‘$\pi$ makes me happy!’’. Note: the Makefile compiles the sample using pdf\LaTeX\ which cannot use \texttt{psfrag} directly. For some options that work with pdf\LaTeX, please see this discussion: \url{http://tex.stackexchange.com/questions/11839}. For the caption, we have used the optional argument for the caption command so that only a short version of this caption occurs in the list of figures.)

\end{center}
\end{figure}
\afterpage{\clearpage}
Here is an example of a figure environment.

Perhaps I should say that the example of a figure can be seen in Figure\ref{fig:happy}. Figure placement can be tricky with \LaTeX\ because figures and tables are treated as ‘‘floats’’: text can flow around them, but if there is not enough space, they will appear later. To prevent figures from going too far, the \verb|\afterpage{\clearpage}| command can be used. This makes sure that the figure are typeset at the end of the page (possibly appear on their own on the following pages) and before any subsequent text.

The \verb|\clearpage| forces a page break so that the figure can be placed, but without the the \verb|\afterpage{}| command, the page would be broken too early (at the \verb|\clearpage| statement). The \verb|\afterpage{}| command tells \LaTeX{} to issue the command after the present page has been rendered.

\section{Tables}
We have already included one table:~\ref{tab:Table1}. Another table is plopped right here.

\begin{table}[ht]
\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|l||l|l||l|l|}
\hline
&\multicolumn{2}{l|}{Singular}&\multicolumn{2}{l|}{Plural} \\
\cline{2-5}
&English&\textbf{Gaeilge}&English&\textbf{Gaeilge} \\
\hline\hline
1st Person & at me&\textbf{agam}& at us&\textbf{againn} \\
2nd Person & at you&\textbf{agat}& at you &\textbf{agaibh} \\
3rd Person & at him&\textbf{aige}& at them &\textbf{acu} \\
& at her&\textbf{aici}& & \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\caption{
\label{tab:Table2}\ Another table.}
\end{center}
\end{table}

Well, actually, as with Figures, tables do not necessarily appear right ‘‘here’’ because tables are also ‘‘floats’’.  

37
\LaTeX{} puts them where it can. Because of this, one should refer to floats by their labels rather than by their location. This example is demonstrated by Table~\ref{tab:Table2}. This one is pretty close, however. (Note: you should generally not put tables or figures in the middle of a paragraph. This example is for demonstration purposes only.)

Another useful package is \texttt{\usepackage{longtable}} which provides the \texttt{longtable} environment. This is nice because it allows tables to span multiple pages. Table~\ref{tab:longtable} has been formatted this way.

\begin{center}
\begin{longtable}{|l|l|l|}
\caption{Feasible triples for highly variable Grid}\\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{Time (s)} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{Triple chosen} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{Other feasible triples} \\
\hline
\endfirsthead
\multicolumn{3}{|c|}{\textbf{\tablename\thetable{} -- continued from previous page}} \\
\hline
\multicolumn{1}{|c|}{Time (s)} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{Triple chosen} & \multicolumn{1}{c|}{Other feasible triples} \\
\hline
\hline
\endhead
\hline
\multicolumn{3}{|r|}{(Continued on next page)} \\
\hline
\endfoot
\hline
\hline
\endlastfoot
0 & (1, 11, 13725) & (1, 12, 10980), (1, 13, 8235), (2, 2, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
274 & (1, 12, 10980) & (1, 13, 8235), (2, 2, 0), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
5490 & (1, 12, 13725) & (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
8235 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
10980 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
13725 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
16470 & (1, 13, 16470) & (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
19215 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
21960 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
24705 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
27450 & (1, 12, 16470) & (1, 13, 13725), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
30195 & (2, 2, 2745) & (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
32940 & (1, 13, 16470) & (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
35685 & (1, 13, 13725) & (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
38430 & (1, 13, 10980) & (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
41175 & (1, 12, 13725) & (1, 13, 10980), (2, 2, 2745), (2, 3, 0), (3, 1, 0) \\
\end{longtable}
\end{center}
Note that if you use subsections or further divisions under an
unnumbered section, then you should make them unnumbered as well otherwise you will end up with zeros in the section numbering.

\chapter{Landscape Mode}

The landscape mode allows you to rotate a page through 90 degrees. It is generally not a good idea to make the chapter heading landscape, but it can be useful for long tables etc.

\begin{landscape}
This text should appear rotated, allowing for formatting of very wide tables etc. Note that this might only work after you convert the \texttt{dvi} file to a postscript (\texttt{ps}) or \texttt{pdf} file using \texttt{dvips} or \texttt{dvipdf} etc. This feature is provided by the \texttt{lscape} and the \texttt{pdflscape} packages. The latter is preferred if it works as it also rotates the pages in the pdf file for easier viewing.
\end{landscape}

%%% This file is setup to use a bibtex file sample.bib and uses the plain style. Other styles may be used depending on the conventions of your field of study.

%%% Note: the bibliography must come before the appendices.
\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{sample}

%%% Use this to reset the appendix counter. Note that the FoGS requires that the word ‘‘Appendices’’ appear in the table of contents either before each appendix label or as a division denoting the start of the appendices. We take the latter option here. This is ensured by making the \texttt{appendices} option a default option to the UBC thesis class.

%%% If you only have one appendix, please uncomment the following line.
\renewcommand{\appendicesname}{Appendix}
\appendix

\chapter{First Appendix}
Here you can have your appendices. Note that if you only have a single appendix, you should issue \verb|\renewcommand{\appendicesname}{Appendix}| before calling \verb|\appendix| to display the singular ‘‘Appendix’’ rather than the default plural ‘‘Appendices’’.

\chapter{Second Appendix}
Here is the second appendix.

%%% This changes the headings and chapter titles (no numbers for example).
\backmatter
This chapter shows you how to include additional information in your thesis, the removal of which will not affect the submission. Such material should be removed before the thesis is actually submitted. First, the chapter is unnumbered and not included in the Table of Contents. Second, it is the last section of the thesis, so its removal will not alter any of the page numbering etc. for the previous sections. Do not include any floats, however, as these will appear in the initial lists.

The \texttt{ubcthesis} \LaTeX{} class has been designed to aid you in producing a thesis that conforms to the requirements of The University of British Columbia Faculty of Graduate Studies (FoGS). Proper use of this class and sample is highly recommended---and should produce a well formatted document that meets the FoGS requirement. Notwithstanding, complex theses may require additional formatting that may conflict with some of the requirements. We therefore \emph{highly recommend} that you consult one of the FoGS staff for assistance and an assessment of potential problems \emph{before} starting final draft.

While we have attempted to address most of the thesis formatting requirements in these files, they do not constitute an official set of thesis requirements. The official requirements are available at the following section of the FoGS web site:

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\url{http://www.grad.ubc.ca/current-students/dissertation-thesis-preparation}\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

We recommend that you review these instructions carefully.

\section{End of Document}

Finally, we close off the file so that nothing else is put into the sample thesis.
13 Sample MIT Thesis

This was a thesis conforming to the Massachusetts Institute of Technology guidelines when I was a student. I have not kept on top of the changes, so some modifications may have to be made.

Here is the comment that tells DOCSTRIP to put the following code into mitsample.tex.

\section{Identification}

This section identifies the version of the file. It also indicates which version of \LaTeX (\LaTeX 2ε) is required and makes sure that an appropriate message is displayed when another \TeX format is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\% This Sample thesis requires \LaTeXe
\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1995/12/01]
\end{verbatim}

Now we announce the file or class name and its version:

\begin{verbatim}
\ProvidesFile{mitsample.tex}[2015/05/31 v1.72 ^^J
Massachusetts Institute of Technology Sample Thesis]
\end{verbatim}

\section{Document Structure}

This section describes the structure that your \LaTeX document must have. Various sections of the sample code will be presented to illustrate this structure though the sample file mitsample.tex does not contain all of the options and features.

The first section of a \LaTeX document contains information about the structure of the document. This is called the document preamble.

Usually the first command is the \texttt{documentclass} command which specifies the class to use and the options to the class

\begin{verbatim}
\documentclass[msc,10pt,oneside]{mitthesis}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
%% To compile issue the following commands:
%% latex mitsample
%% bibtex mitsample
%% latex mitsample
%% latex mitsample
%% latex mitsample
%% latex mitsample
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
%% To view use xdvi (on unix systems):
%% xdvi mitsample.dvi
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
%% To make a postscript file, use dvips:
%% dvips -o mitsample.ps mitsample.dvi
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
%% To view the postscript file, use ghostview or gv (on unix systems):
\end{verbatim}
% gv mitsample.ps
%
%************************************************
% Optional packages.
%
% The use of these packages is optional: they are standard now and
% should be installed on your system, but if they are not, you might
% have to comment out the appropriate lines to get this file to
% compile.
%
%******** natbib ******************************
% This is a very nice package for bibliographies. It includes options
% for sorting and compressing bibliographic entries.
\usepackage[numbers,sort&compress]{natbib}

%******** graphics and graphicx **********************
% This allows you to include encapsulated postscript files. If you
% don't have this, comment the \includegraphics{} line following the
% comment "%includegraphics" line later in this file.
\usepackage{graphicx}

%******** pdflscape ******************************
% This allows you to include landscape layout pages by using the
% |landscape| environment. The use of |pdflscape| is preferred over
% the standard |lscape| package because it automatically rotates the
% page in the pdf file for easier reading. (Thanks to Joseph Shea
% for pointing this out.)
\usepackage{pdflscape}

%******** psfrag ****************************
% This allows you to replace text in postscript pictures with formated
% latex text. This allows you to use math in graph labels
% etc. Uncomment the psfrag lines following the "%psfrag" comment
% later in this file if you don't have this package. The replacements
% will only be visible in the final postscript file: they will be
% listed in the .dvi file but not performed.
\usepackage{psfrag}

%******** afterpage **************************
% This package allows you to issue commands at the end of the current
% page. A good use for this is to use the command
\afterpage\clearpage right after a figure. This will cause the
figure to be inserted on the page following the current one (or on
the current page if it will fit) but will not break the page in the
middle.
\usepackage{afterpage}

%******** hyperref ****************************
% Please read the manual:
% http://www.tug.org/applications/hyperref/manual.html
13.2.1 Chapter and section counter formats

For any counter CTR, \theCTR is a macro that defines the printed version of counter CTR. It is defined in terms of the following macros:

\arabic{COUNTER} prints the value of COUNTER as an Arabic numeral.

\roman{COUNTER} prints the value of COUNTER as a lowercase Roman numeral.

\Roman{COUNTER} prints the value of COUNTER as an uppercase Roman numeral.

\alph{COUNTER} prints the value of COUNTER as a lowercase letter: 1 = a, 2 = b, etc.

\Alph{COUNTER} prints the value of COUNTER as an uppercase letter: 1 = A, 2 = B, etc.

This section of the sample class redefines these (actually, the redefinitions match the defaults so this would be pointless in the actual thesis, but is here for demonstration purposes.)

%% One might want to override the format of the section and chapter
%% numbers. This shows you how to do it. Note that
\renewcommand\thepart \Roman{part}
The section and lower commands also display the numbers of higher sections too and a punctuation mark. These show you how to change these. (Again, the formats actually given here are the defaults.)

\renewcommand{\thesubsection}{\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}
\renewcommand{\thesubsubsection}{\thesubsection.\arabic{subsubsection}}
\renewcommand{\theparagraph}{\thesubsubsection.\arabic{paragraph}}
\renewcommand{\thesubparagraph}{\theparagraph.\arabic{subparagraph}}

\renewcommand{\thechapter}{\arabic{chapter}}
\renewcommand{\thesection}{\thechapter.\arabic{section}}
\renewcommand{\thesubsection}{\thesection.\arabic{subsection}}
\renewcommand{\thesubsubsection}{\thesubsection.\arabic{subsubsection}}
\renewcommand{\theparagraph}{\thesubsubsection.\arabic{paragraph}}
\renewcommand{\thesubparagraph}{\theparagraph.\arabic{subparagraph}}

% Two related counters control the level of sections that are numbered and the level of sections included in the table of contents:
\setcounter{tocdepth}{2}
\setcounter{secnumdepth}{2}

% Here is the start of the document.
\begin{document}
% Unlike the UBC thesis, page numbering for MIT theses should start at 1 and continue. Thus, there is no \frontmatter command issued here as there was for the UBC thesis.
% Any other lists should come here, i.e. Abbreviation schemes, definitions, lists of formulae, list of schemes, etc.
\chapter{Preface}
These papers have been published earlier.
The `mitthesis` LaTeX class and the accompanying sample files are *unofficial* and are not supported by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. While I have attempted to make the style file and sample files conform to all of the requirements set forth by the library, you should always consult one of the library staff members for assistance with problems *before* starting final draft. You should be able to find the thesis requirements at one of the following sites:

\begin{table}
\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{|l|}
\hline
\url{http://libraries.mit.edu/archives/thesis-specs/}\\
\url{http://libraries.mit.edu/archives/index.html}\\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{center}
\caption{\label{tab:ubcurls} Potential sources of information regarding thesis preparation at MIT.}
\end{table}

Here is a quote:

\begin{quote}
\begin{center}
47
\end{center}
\end{quote}
This is a small poem, a little poem, a Haiku, to show you how to. ---Michael Forbes.

This small poem shows several features:

- The \verb|\newpage| command has been used to force a page break.
- The pagestyle has been set to suppress the headers using the \verb|\thispagestyle{plain}| command. Note that using \verb|\pagestyle{plain}| would have affected all of the subsequent pages.
- The \verb|\chapter[Poem]{A Japanese Introduction}| command has been used with an optional argument to generate a title and to list this ‘‘chapter’’ in the table of contents as ‘‘Poem’’. If one did not desire to have an entry in the table of contents, then one would just use the starred command \verb|\chapter*{}|. The use of an optional argument is useful for long chapter and section titles that take up too much space in the table of contents.

%% Parts are the largest units
\part{Thesis}

%% Chapters are the next main unit.
\chapter{This is a Chapter}

%% Sections are a sub-unit
\section{A Section}

Here is a section with some text. Equations look like this $y=x$.

This is an example of a second paragraph in a section so you can see how much it is indented by.

%% Subsections follow
\subsection{This is a Subsection}

Here is an example of a citation: \cite{Forbes:2006ba}. The actual form of the citation is governed by the bibliography style. These citations are maintained in a BIBTeX file \texttt{sample.bib}. You could type these directly into the file. For an example of the format to use look at the file \texttt{mitsample.bbl} after you compile this file.

This is an example of a second paragraph in a subsection so you can see how much it is indented by.

\subsubsection{This is a Subsubsection}

Here are some more citations \cite{LL3:1977,Peccei:1989,Turner:1999}. If you use the \texttt{natbib} package with the \verb|+sort&compress+}
option, then the following citation will look the same as the first

This is an example of a second paragraph in a subsubsection so you can
see how much it is indented by.

\paragraph{This is a Paragraph}

Paragraphs and subparagraphs are the smallest units of text. There is
no subsubsubsection etc.

\subparagraph{This is a Subparagraph}

This is the last level of organisation. If you need more than this,
you should consider reorganizing your work\dots

\begin{equation}
\mathrm{f}(x) = \int_{-\infty}^{\int_{-\infty}^x} e^{-\frac{y^2}{2}} \mathrm{d}y e^{-z^2} \mathrm{d}z
\end{equation}

In order to show you what a separate page would look like (i.e. without
a chapter heading) I must type some more text. Thus I will babble a
bit and keep babbling for at least one more page\dots What you
should notice is that the chapter titles appear substantially lower
than the continuing text. Babble babble

\begin{table}
\begin{tabular}{|r||r@{.}l|}
\hline
Phoenix & 960&35 \\
\hline
Calgary & 250&00 \\
\hline
\end{tabular}
\end{table}
\end{tabular}
\caption{
\label{tab:Table1}
Here is the caption for this wonderful table. Text of Caption}
\end{table}

\chapter[Another Chapter\ldots]{Another Chapter with a Very Long Chapter-name that will Probably Cause Problems}
This chapter name is very long and does not display properly in the running headers or in the table of contents. To deal with this, we provide a shorter version of the title as the optional argument to the \verb|\chapter[{}]| command.

\section{Another Section}
Another bunch of text to demonstrate what this file does.
You might want a list for example:
\begin{itemize}
\item An item in a list.
\item Another item in a list.
\end{itemize}

\section*{An Unnumbered Section That is Not Included in the Table of Contents}
%%% We would like to place the figure here, so we start with [h].
%%% Note that we have located the figure between paragraphs (rather, %
%%% before one) so that it does not split up sentences.
\begin{figure}[ht]
\begin{center}
%%% psfrag: comment the following line if not using the psfrag package
\psfrag{pie makes me happy!}{$\pi$ makes me happy!}
%%% includegraphics: comment the following if not using the graphicx package
\includegraphics[width=0.4\textwidth]{fig}
\caption[Happy Face: figure example.]{\label{fig:happy} This is a figure of a happy face with a \texttt{psfrag} replacement. The original figure (drawn in \texttt{xfig} and exported to a .eps file) has the text ‘‘pie makes me happy!’’. The \texttt{psfrag} package replaces this with ‘‘$\pi$ makes me happy!’’. Note that we have used the optional argument for the caption command so that only a short version of this caption occurs in the list of figures.}
\end{center}
\end{figure}
\afterpage{clearpage}
Here is an example of a figure environment.
Perhaps I should say that the example of a figure can be seen in Figure\ref{fig:happy}. Figure placement can be tricky with \LaTeX because figures and tables are treated as ‘‘floats’’: text can flow around them, but if there is not enough space, they will appear later. To prevent figures from going too far, the \verb|\afterpage{|\verb\clearpage|} command can be used. This makes sure that the figure are typeset at the end of the page (possibly appear on
their own on the following pages) and before any subsequent text.

The \verb|\clearpage| forces a page break so that the figure can be placed, but without the the \verb|\afterpage{}| command, the page would be broken too early (at the \verb|\clearpage| statement). The \verb|\afterpage{}| command tells \LaTeX{} to issue the command after the present page has been rendered.

Be careful when using the ‘‘here’’ placement option \verb|\begin{figure}[ht]| that you place the figure between paragraphs in your text, otherwise \LaTeX{} might actually insert it in the middle of a sentence (which does not look very good and is frowned upon by the editors!)

\subsection*{An Unnumbered Subsection}

Note that if you use subsections or further divisions under an unnumbered section, then you should make them unnumbered as well otherwise you will end up with zeros in the section numbering.

\chapter{Landscape Mode}

The landscape mode allows you to rotate a page through 90 degrees. It is generally not a good idea to make the chapter heading landscape, but it can be useful for long tables etc.

\begin{landscape}

This text should appear rotated, allowing for formatting of very wide tables etc. Note that this might only work after you convert the \texttt{dvi} file to a postscript (\texttt{ps}) or \texttt{pdf} file using \texttt{dvips} or \texttt{dvipdf} etc. This feature is provided by the \verb|lscape| and the \verb|pdflscape| packages. The latter is preferred if it works as it also rotates the pages in the pdf file for easier viewing.

\end{landscape}

%% This file is setup to use a bibtex file sample.bib and uses the plain style. Note, the bibliography could come after the appendices.

\bibliographystyle{plain}
\bibliography{sample}

%% If you only have one appendix, please uncomment the following line.
% \renewcommand{\appendicesname}{Appendix}
\appendix

\chapter{First Appendix}

Here you can have your appendices. Note that if you only have a single appendix, you should issue \verb|\renewcommand{\appendicesname}{Appendix}| before calling \verb|\appendix| to display the singular ‘‘Appendix’’ rather than the default plural ‘‘Appendices’’.

\chapter{Second Appendix}
Here is the second appendix.

%% This changes the headings and chapter titles (no numbers for example).
\backmatter

%% Indices come here.

\section{End of Document}
\end{document}

Finally, we close off the file so that nothing else is put into the sample thesis.

\section{Sample Bibliographic Database (BIBTeX)}

This section presents the code for the bibliographic database for the sample thesis with comments. It is recommended that you first obtain the sample thesis files and compile them as described in Section 2.2.3. This way you can try the various options to see how they work.

Here is the comment that tells DOCSTRIP to put the following code into sample.bib.

\section{Identification}

This section identifies the version of the file. Formally this should be a comment, but as it appears prior to any entry, bibtex will treat it as a comment (beware though, the character may not appear outside of an entry.)

\section{Document Structure}

These are just some examples of articles and books. Some of the fields are not needed, for example the abstract and SLACcitation fields. There are many other types of documents. The entry CL:2000 poses a problem in the URL field. I am not sure how to get around this right now.
Several independent observations of the Galactic core suggest hitherto unexplained sources of energy. We suggest that dark matter in the form of dense antimatter nuggets could provide a natural site for electron and proton annihilation, providing 511 keV photons, gamma-rays, and diffuse keV X-ray radiation. We show that identifying dark matter as antimatter nuggets is consistent with the observed emissions, and we make definite predictions about their spectrum and morphology. If correct, our proposal not only identifies dark matter and explains baryogenesis, but allows X-ray observations to directly probe the matter distribution in our Galaxy.
We show that two new intra-species P-wave superfluid phases appear in two-component asymmetric Fermi systems with short-range S-wave interactions. In the BEC limit, phonons of the molecular BEC induce P-wave superfluidity in the excess fermions. In the BCS limit, density fluctuations induce P-wave superfluidity in both the majority and the minority species. These phases may be realized in experiments with spin-polarized Fermi gases.
where the helicity of the $\alpha - \Omega$ dynamo is driven by star-disk collisions. The back reaction of the saturated dynamo forms a force-free field helix that carries the energy and flux of the dynamo and redistributes them within the clusters.

@Misc{Turner:1999,
  author    = "M. S. Turner",
  title     = "Dark Matter, Dark Energy and Fundamental Physics",
  howpublished = "astro-ph/9912211",
  year      = "1999",
  month     = dec,
  abstract  = "More than sixty years ago Zwicky made the case that the great clusters of galaxies are held together by the gravitational force of unseen (dark) matter. Today, the case is stronger and more precise: Dark, nonbaryonic matter accounts for $30\% \pm 7\%$ of the critical mass density, with baryons (most of which are dark) contributing only $4.5\% \pm 0.5\%$ of the critical density. The large-scale structure that exists in the Universe indicates that the bulk of the nonbaryonic dark matter must be cold (slowly moving particles). The SuperKamiokande detection of neutrino oscillations shows that particle dark matter exists, crossing an important threshold. Over the past few years a case has developed for a dark-energy problem. This dark component contributes about $80\% \pm 20\%$ of the critical density and is characterized by very negative pressure $p_X < -0.6 \rho_X$. Consistent with this picture of dark energy and dark matter are measurements of CMB anisotropy that indicate that total contribution of matter and energy is within $10\%$ of the critical density. Fundamental physics beyond the standard model is implicated in both the dark matter and dark energy puzzles: new fundamental particles (e.g., axion or neutralino) and new forms of relativistic energy (e.g., vacuum energy or a light scalar field). A flood of observations will shed light on the dark side of the Universe over the next two decades; as it does it will advance our understanding of the Universe and the laws of physics that govern it."
}

@Book{Vilenkin:1994,
  author    = {Alexander Vilenkin and E. P. S. Shellard},
  title     = {Cosmic Strings and Other Topological Defects},
  publisher = {Cambridge University Press},
  year      = 1994,
  address   = {Cambridge}
Part IV
The genthesis Document Class

Here starts the description of the actual thesis class definitions. All of the source code is documented here. This is generally not intended to be of use to people writing theses unless they need to know the internals of how the thesis class works. It may be of use to people writing other classes as I have included many comments about things I learned while writing the class. We start with some notes about this.

15 Notes about Writing Classes

My philosophy in writing the thesis classes is described below:

1. The thesis class should behave as close to the standard classes as possible so that it is compatible with as many other packages as possible. To this end, the thesis class has been crafted directly from the standard \LaTeX\ book class.

2. If there is a standard way to accomplish a certain task, then support that rather than reimplementing the method in a non-standard way. For example, encourage the use packages like fancyhdr or geometry rather than providing a bunch of thesis specific commands for specifying fancy headers and for changing the margins.

3. Formatting options should be easily specified in both the thesis flavours and actual theses. This goal is only partly realized, but many of the magic numbers that control formatting in the original book class have been replaced with variables that can be controlled by various options.

I based this code on the file \texttt{ltclass.dtx} and have kept most of the change notes and comments so that one has a hope of identifying potential incompatibilities and does not have to reinvent the wheel.

It is important to make sure that the interface to standard \LaTeX\ commands does not change. For example, I wanted to provide a customized version of \texttt{\part}, \texttt{\chapter} etc. such that the starred form accepted an optional argument, adding a line to the table of contents. This turned out to break the \texttt{hyperref} package because it redefines \texttt{\@chapter} and assumes that this behaves the same way as in the standard \LaTeX\ distribution.

A similar problem with \texttt{hyperref} compatibility was encountered when trying to add formatting options for the table of contents. I thought that it would be
easiest to simply modify the \contentsline command to include the formatting, but the hyperref package relies on modifying this command to work, so this type of change was incompatible. Hopefully future versions of \LaTeX will have much less hard-coded so these types of changes are easier to make. Now, onto the code!

16 Identification

This section identifies the version of the file. It also indicates which version of \LaTeX (\LaTeX \text{2}\epsilon) is required and makes sure that an appropriate message is displayed when another \TeX format is used.

Here is the comment that tells DOCSTRIP to put the following code into ubcsample.tex.

1 \langle\genthesis

And the required version. Note this has not been thoroughly tested yet.

2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1995/12/01]

Now we announce the file or class name and its version:

3 \ProvidesClass{genthesis}[2015/05/31 v1.72 ^^J
4 University of British Columbia Thesis Class]

17 Initial Code

In this part we define a few commands that are used later on. We start by undefining a few that don’t make sense:

5 \global\let\and\@undefined

\@ptsize This control sequence is used to store the second digit of the pointsize we are typesetting in. So, normally, it’s value is one of 0, 1 or 2.

6 \newcommand{\@ptsize{}}

\if@restonecol When the document has to printed in two columns, we sometimes have to temporarily switch to one column. This switch is used to remember to switch back.

7 \newif\if@restonecol

\@parttocdots This turns on part leaders in the table of contents.

8 \newif\if@parttocdots \@parttocdotstrue

\@chaptertocdots This turns on chapter leaders in the table of contents.

9 \newif\if@chaptertocdots \@chaptertocdotstrue
17.1 Tools

Here we define some macros that are useful when writing classes.

\@addto

This macro allows you to build up a collection of commands to be inserted at a later point in the document. For example, after

\% \newcommand{\@names}{}
\% \@addto{\@names}{John, }
\% \@addto{\@names}{Paul, }
\% \@addto{\@names}{Tom.}
\%

the macro \@names would expand to John, Paul, Tom. This functionality could be obtained with a savebox, but there is an important difference: \@addto does not expand the text in the current environment. Thus, if you were to include code such as \textwidth, then this would ultimately expand to the width of the text where the \@names command was issued rather than the value where the \@addto was issued. This is accomplished by using the fact that the token registers only expand once. See Exercise 20.15 in the \TeX book.

\newcommand{\@addto}[2]{
\expandafter\let\expandafter\old\csname#1\endcsname
\toks1=\expandafter{\old}
\toks2=\expandafter{#2}
\expandafter\xdef\csname#1\endcsname{\the\toks1 \the\toks2 }
}

\SetTime
\hours
\minutes
\now

These are some macros that set the time for use in the headers in draft mode.

\newcount{\hours}
\newcount{\minutes}
\def{\SetTime}{\hours=\time
\global{\divide\hours by 60}
\minutes=\hours
\multiply\minutes by 60
\advance\minutes by-\time
\global{\multiply\minutes by-1}
\def{\now}{\number\hours:\ifnum\minutes<10 0\fi\number\minutes}

\@toupper
\@toctoupper
\@condupper

Converts the argument to uppercase if the upper or tocupper options are specified. \@condupper takes as a first argument a conditional and based on that conditional, makes the text uppercase. Note that we have put the \if portion of the conditional inside the macro. This hides it and permits nesting conditionals.

\newcommand{\@toupper}[1]{\if@upper\MakeUppercase{#1}\else{#1}\fi}
\newcommand{\@toctoupper}[1]{\if@tocupper\MakeUppercase{#1}\else{#1}\fi}
\newcommand{\@condupper}[2]{\csname if#1\endcsname\MakeUppercase{#2}\else{{#2}}\fi}
\newcommand{\tst}[1]{\if#1{True}\else{False}\fi}
\@toctoitalic \textit{arg} \else \text{arg}\fi}

\@startonecolumn
\@endonecolumn

These ensure one-column mode and restore for things like the toc, authorization form, titlepage etc. First we must define some temporary lengths to save the old lengths.

\newlength{UBCT@oldtextwidth}
\newlength{UBCT@oldtextheight}
\newlength{UBCT@oldoddsidemargin}
\newlength{UBCT@oldevensidemargin}
\newlength{UBCT@oldtopmargin}
\newlength{UBCT@oldtopskip}
\newlength{UBCT@old@colht}
\newlength{UBCT@old@colroom}
\newlength{UBCT@oldvsize}
\newlength{UBCT@oldcolumnwidth}
\newlength{UBCT@oldhsize}
\newlength{UBCT@oldlinewidth}
\newlength{UBCT@oldmarginparsep}
\newlength{UBCT@oldmarginparwidth}

Now we define the macro body. First we backup the current parameters.

\providecommand*{\@startonecolumn}{
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldtextwidth}{\textwidth}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldtextheight}{\textheight}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldoddsidemargin}{\oddsidemargin}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldevensidemargin}{\evensidemargin}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldtopmargin}{\topmargin}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldtopskip}{\topskip}
\global\setlength{UBCT@old@colht}{\@colht}
\global\setlength{UBCT@old@colroom}{\@colroom}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldvsize}{\vsize}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldcolumnwidth}{\columnwidth}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldhsize}{\hsize}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldlinewidth}{\linewidth}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldmarginparsep}{\marginparsep}
\global\setlength{UBCT@oldmarginparwidth}{\marginparwidth}
\global\let{UBCT@oldbaselinestretch}{\baselinestretch}

\if@twocolumn
\global\let\restonecoltrue
\else
\restonecolfalse
\fi

First, we calculate the maximum \textwidth, which we will allow on the selected paper and store it in \@tempdima. Then we store the length of a line with approximately 60–70 characters in \@tempdimb. The values given are more or less suitable when Computer Modern fonts are used.
In one column mode the text should not be wider than the minimum of the paperwidth (minus 2 inches for the margins) and the maximum length of a line as defined by the number of characters.

Here we modify the width of the text a little to be a whole number of points.

The horizontal space between the main text and marginal notes is determined by \margindparsep, the minimum vertical separation between two marginal notes is controlled by \marginparpush.

For one-sided printing we centre the text on the page, by calculating the difference between \textwidth and \paperwidth. Half of that difference is than used for the margin (thus \oddsidemargin is 1in less).

The width of the margin for text is set to the remainder of the width except for a ‘real margin’ of white space of width 0.4in. A check should perhaps be built in to ensure that the (text) margin width does not get too small!
For one-sided printing we centre the text on the page, by calculating the difference between `\textwidth` and `\paperwidth`. Half of that difference is then used for the margin (thus `\oddsidemargin` is 1in less).

```latex
\else
  \setlength{\@tempdima}{\paperwidth}
  \addtolength{\@tempdima}{-\textwidth}
  \global\setlength{\oddsidemargin}{.5\@tempdima}
  \global\addtolength{\oddsidemargin}{-1in}
  \global\setlength{\marginparwidth}{.5\@tempdima}
  \global\addtolength{\marginparwidth}{-\marginparsep}
  \global\addtolength{\marginparwidth}{-0.4in}
  \global\addtolength{\marginparwidth}{-.4in}
  \fi
```

With the above algorithm the `\marginparwidth` can come out quite large which we may not want.

```latex
\ifdim\marginparwidth>2in
  \global\setlength{\marginparwidth}{2in}
\fi
```

Having done these calculations we make them pt values.

```latex
\global\@settopoint{\oddsidemargin}
\global\@settopoint{\marginparwidth}
```

The `\evensidemargin` can now be computed from the values set above.

```latex
\global\setlength{\evensidemargin}{\paperwidth}
\global\addtolength{\evensidemargin}{-2in}
\global\addtolength{\evensidemargin}{-\textwidth}
\global\addtolength{\evensidemargin}{-\oddsidemargin}
```

Setting `\evensidemargin` to a full point value may produce a small error. However it will lie within the error range a doublesided printer of today’s technology can accurately print.

```latex
\global\@settopoint{\evensidemargin}
```

Now we change the number of columns because this command uses the lengths to format stuff.

```latex
\onecolumn
\else
  \@restonecolfalse
\fi
```

```latex
providecommand*{\@endonecolumn}{
\global\setlength{\textwidth}{\UBCT@oldtextwidth}
\global\setlength{\textheight}{\UBCT@oldtextheight}
\global\setlength{\oddsidemargin}{\UBCT@oldoddsidemargin}
\global\setlength{\evensidemargin}{\UBCT@oldevensidemargin}
\global\setlength{\topmargin}{\UBCT@oldtopmargin}
\global\setlength{\topskip}{\UBCT@oldtopskip}
}```
\if@openright \newif\if@openright
\if@openrightblank \newif\if@openrightblank
\if@mainmatter The switch \texttt{\if@mainmatter}, only available in the document class book, indicates whether we are processing the main material in the book.
\if@empty This is checks if a given command is empty or not.
\def\if@empty#1#2\else#3\fi{\def\UBCT@tempa{}\ifx\UBCT@tempa#1#2\else#3\fi}

18 Document Markup Functions

These are defined here because some of the commands are used by the options.

18.1 Title Page

\title \author \date

These three macros are provided by \texttt{latex.dtx} to provide information about the title, author(s) and date of the document. The information is stored away in internal control sequences. It is the task of the \texttt{\maketitle} command to use the information provided. The definitions of these macros are shown here for information.

\% \newcommand*{\title}[1]{\gdef\@title{#1}}
\% \newcommand*{\author}[1]{\gdef\@author{#1}}
\% \newcommand*{\date}[1]{\gdef\@date{#1}}

The \texttt{\today} macro gets today's date by default.
This macro provides the alphanumeric version of the month. It is also provided by the `datetime` package, but we don’t want to depend on this as it is not widely distributed. Our version is only defined for English.

```latex
\providecommand*{\monthname}[1][\month]{% 
\newcount@orgargctr 
@orgargctr=#1\relax 
\ifcase@orgargctr 
\PackageError{genthesis}{Invalid Month number \the@orgargctr}{Month numbers should go from 1 (January) to 12 (December)}% 
or January% 
or February% 
or March% 
or April% 
or May% 
or June% 
or July% 
or August% 
or September% 
or October% 
or November% 
or December% 
\else \PackageError{genthesis}{Invalid Month number \the@orgargctr}{Month numbers should go from 1 (January) to 12 (December)}% 
\fi% 
} %\monthname
```

This macro also has an associated boolean which tells the titlepage whether or not it should attempt to display a subtitle.

```latex
\newif\if@subtitle \@subtitlefalse 
\newcommand*{\subtitle}[1]{\@subtitletrue \gdef\@subtitle{#1}}
```

These commands are added for theses. They are used on the title page.

```latex
\newcommand*{\institution}[1]{\gdef\@institution{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@institution}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\institution given}}
\newcommand*{\institutionaddress}[1]{\gdef\@institutionaddress{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@institutionaddress}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\institutionaddress given}}
\newcommand*{\degreetitle}[1]{\gdef\@degreetitle{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@degreetitle}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\degreetitle given}}
\newcommand*{\degreedate}[1]{\gdef\@degreedate{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@degreedate}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\degreedate given}}
\newcommand*{\department}[1]{\gdef\@department{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@department}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\department given}}
\newcommand*{\program}[1]{\gdef\@program{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@program}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\program given}}
\newcommand*{\faculty}[1]{\gdef\@faculty{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@faculty}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\faculty given}}
\newcommand*{\advisor}[1]{\gdef\@advisor{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@advisor}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\advisor given}}
\newcommand*{\advisortitle}[1]{\gdef\@advisortitle{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@advisortitle}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\advisortitle given}}
\newcommand*{\copyrighttext}[1]{\gdef\@copyrighttext{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@copyrighttext}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\copyrighttext given}}
\newcommand*{\copyrightnotice}[1]{\gdef\@copyrightnotice{#1}} 
\providecommand*{\@copyrightnotice}{\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\copyrightnotice given}}
```
\providecommand*{\@program}{%
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\program given}}
199 \newcommand*{\faculty}[1]{\gdef\@faculty{#1}}
200 \providecommand*{\@faculty}{%
201
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\faculty given}}
202 \newcommand*{\advisor}[1]{\gdef\@advisor{#1}}
203 \providecommand*{\@advisor}{%
204
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\advisor given}}
205 \newcommand*{\advisortitle}[1]{\gdef\@advisortitle{#1}}
206 \providecommand*{\@advisortitle}{%
207
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\advisortitle given}}
208 \newcommand*{\copyrighttext}[1]{\gdef\@copyrighttext{#1}}
209 \providecommand*{\@copyrighttext}{%
210
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\copyrighttext given}}
211 \newcommand*{\copyrightnotice}[1]{\gdef\@copyrightnotice{#1}}
212 \providecommand*{\@copyrightnotice}{%
213
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{No \noexpand\copyrightnotice given}}
197

198

Some of these get default values here:
\institution{The University of British Columbia}
\institutionaddress{Vancouver}
216 \department{Department of Physics and Astronomy}
217 \program{in Physics}
218 \faculty{The Faculty of Graduate Studies}
219 \copyrighttext{\copyright\ \@author\ \@copyrightyear}
220 \copyrightnotice{All rights reserved. This work may not be\\
221
reproduced in whole or in part, by photocopy\\
222
or other means, without permission of the author.}
214
215

\numberofsignatures

This is the number of signature lines to put on the cover.
223
224

\@copyrightyear
\@submitdate

\newcommand*{\numberofsignatures}[1]{\gdef\@numberofsignatures{#1}}
\numberofsignatures{4}

These are dates. By default, these are set to the date of compilation.
\newcommand*{\copyrightyear}[1]{\gdef\@copyrightyear{#1}}
\newcommand*{\submitdate}[1]{\gdef\@submitdate{#1}}
227 \copyrightyear{\number\year}
228 \submitdate{\today}
225
226

\signature

The \signature command adds a signature line to the titlepage. It takes 3 arguments:
\signature[<pos>]{<label>}{<text>}
The label is placed on the same line to the left or right as indicated by the
¡pos¿ argument (l or r). The text is placed under the line on the opposite side.
229

\newcommand{\UBCT@signatures}

230
231

\newcommand{\@signature}[3]{

64


\vspace*{0.75in minus 0.5in}
\if#1l#2\else\fi\dotfill\if#1r#2\else\fi\par*
{ \if#1l\raggedleft\fi%
\if#1r\raggedright\fi%
\if#1c\centering\fi%
#3\par%}
}
\newcommand{\signature}[3][l]{\@signature{#1}{#2}{#3}}
% \end{macro}
\begin{macro}{\addsignature}
% \begin{macrocode}
\newcommand{\addsignature}[3][l]{{\@addto{UBCT@signatures}{\@signature{#1}{#2}{#3}\par}}}
\end{macrocode}
\newcommand{\addsignature}[3][l]{{\@addto{UBCT@signatures}{\@signature{#1}{#2}{#3}\par}}}

\previoudegree
\@previousdegree
This may be issued more than once. Each degree is added to the buffer. The
buffer starts empty.
\newcommand{\@previousdegrees}{}
\newcommand{\previousdegree}[1]{{\@addto{@previousdegrees}{#1\par}}}
\end{macro}

18.2 Fonts
These options provide access to the various fonts for chapter titles etc. First we
must define the font variables. The two fonts \titlepagefont and \titlefont
are used as defaults, though options may changes these.
\titlepagefont
\titlefont
\subtitlefont
\authorfont
\degreetitlefont
\facultyfont
\institutionfont
\abstractfont
\partfont
\partnamefont

65
18.3 Spacing

These options are the various spacings used in Section headings etc.

\partbetweenskip
This length allows for one to adjust the space between the part heading and the part title.

\chapterbeforeskip
\chapterbetweenskip
\chapterafterskip
\sectionindent
\sectionbeforeskip
\sectionafterskip
\subsectionindent
\subsectionbeforeskip
\subsectionafterskip
\subsubsectionindent
\subsubsectionbeforeskip
\subsubsectionafterskip
\paragraphindent
\paragraphbeforeskip
\paragraphafterskip
\subparagraphbeforeskip
\subparagraphafterskip
\partbetweenskip
\chapterbeforeskip
\chapterbetweenskip
\chapterafterskip
\sectionindent
\sectionbeforeskip
\sectionafterskip
\subsectionindent
\subsectionbeforeskip
\subsectionafterskip
\subsubsectionindent
\subsubsectionbeforeskip
\subsubsectionafterskip
\paragraphindent
\paragraphbeforeskip
\paragraphafterskip
\newlength{\subparagraphindent}
\newlength{\subparagraphbeforeskip}
\newlength{\subparagraphafterskip}
\lofindent These lengths specify how much to indent the list of figures and list of tables.

\lotindent \newcommand{\lofindent}{1.5em}
\newcommand{\lotindent}{1.5em}

\loflabelwidth \lotlabelwidth These lengths specify how much space to leave for figure an table labels in the list of figures an list of tables.

\newcommand{\loflabelwidth}{2.3em}
\newcommand{\lotlabelwidth}{2.3em}

\section{Declaration of Options}

\subsection{Setting Paper Sizes}

\begin{itemize}
\item \texttt{a4paper}\n\item \texttt{a5paper}\n\item \texttt{b5paper}\n\item \texttt{letterpaper}\n\item \texttt{executivepaper}\n\item \texttt{legalpaper}\n\end{itemize}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{a4paper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{297mm}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{210mm}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{a5paper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{210mm}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{148mm}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{b5paper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{250mm}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{176mm}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{letterpaper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{11in}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{8.5in}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{legalpaper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{14in}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{8.5in}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{executivepaper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{10.5in}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{7.25in}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{landscape}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\@tempdima}{\paperheight}%
 \setlength{\paperheight}{\paperwidth}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{\@tempdima}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{landscape}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{14in}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{8.5in}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\DeclareOption{executivepaper}}
\begin{verbatim}
{\setlength{\paperheight}{10.5in}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{7.25in}}
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\setlength{\@tempdima}{\paperheight}%
 \setlength{\paperheight}{\paperwidth}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{\@tempdima}}

\texttt{\setlength{\@tempdima}{\paperheight}%
 \setlength{\paperheight}{\paperwidth}%
 \setlength{\paperwidth}{\@tempdima}}
19.2 Choosing the type size

The type size options are handled by defining \@ptsize to contain the last digit of the size in question and branching on \ifcase statements. This is done for historical reasons to stay compatible with other packages that use the \@ptsize variable to select special actions. It makes the declarations of size options less than 10pt difficult, although one can probably use 9 and 8 assuming that a class wont define both 8pt and 18pt options.

\begin{verbatim}
335 \DeclareOption{10pt}{\renewcommand\@ptsize{0}}
336 \DeclareOption{11pt}{\renewcommand\@ptsize{1}}
337 \DeclareOption{12pt}{\renewcommand\@ptsize{2}}
\end{verbatim}

19.3 Two-side or one-side printing

\begin{verbatim}
oneside twoside
\end{verbatim}

For two-sided printing we use the switch \if@twoside. In addition we have to set the \if@mparswitch to get any margin paragraphs into the outside margin.

Note that the user must specify when printing that the printer print double sided: there is no information in the file which indicates this. This option only ensures that the margins will line up properly.

\begin{verbatim}
338 \DeclareOption{oneside}{\@twosidefalse \@mparswitchfalse}
339 \DeclareOption{twoside}{\@twosidetrue \@mparswitchtrue}
\end{verbatim}

19.4 Page number placement

\begin{verbatim}
pagenumBC pagenumBR pagenumTR
\end{verbatim}

These options allow the user to specify where the page numbers will appear. This affects the definition of the pagestyles in Section \ref{sec:pagestyles}. The options refer to “Bottom”, “Top”, “Center”, and “Right”. For two-sided printing, “Right” means on the outside edge. This is implemented with a number \@pagenumstyle that is 0 for BC, 1 for BR and greater than 1 (default) for TR. This is a bit unclear, but allows us to use the \ifcase construct to fall through to the default.

\begin{verbatim}
340 \newcommand{\@pagenumberstyle}{2}
341 \DeclareOption{pagenumBC}{\renewcommand{\@pagenumberstyle}{0}}
342 \DeclareOption{pagenumBR}{\renewcommand{\@pagenumberstyle}{1}}
343 \DeclareOption{pagenumTR}{\renewcommand{\@pagenumberstyle}{2}}
\end{verbatim}

19.5 Draft and committee options

\begin{verbatim}
final draft
\end{verbatim}

If the user requests draft we show any overfull boxes. We could probably add some more interesting stuff to this option.

\begin{verbatim}
344 \newif\if@final \@finaltrue
345 \DeclareOption{draft}{\setlength\overfullrule{5pt}\@finalfalse \SetTime}
346 \DeclareOption{final}{\setlength\overfullrule{0pt}\@finaltrue}
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
committee
\end{verbatim}

Use this option when producing the version to send to your thesis committee if they want the document with 1.5 spacing so there is some room for comments between
the lines. You may change the spacing by redefining the \committeespacing command.

\newif\if@committee \@committeefalse
\DeclareOption{committee}{\@committeetrue}

19.6 openright option

openrightblank in addition forces a blank page before the chapter heading. Only has effect if the twoside option is also used.

\DeclareOption{openright}{\@openrighttrue\@openrightblankfalse}
\DeclareOption{openrightblank}{\@openrighttrue\@openrightblanktrue}
\DeclareOption{openany}{\@openrightfalse\@openrightblankfalse}

19.7 Two-column printing

onecolumn twocolumn Two-column and one-column printing is again realized via a switch. Remember that you must also tell the printer to print on both sides though!

\DeclareOption{onecolumn}{\@twocolumnfalse}
\DeclareOption{twocolumn}{\@twocolumntrue}

19.8 Running headers

runningheaders norunningheaders These display or suppress running headers that contain the current chapter name and number. If they are suppressed, only the pagename will be displayed.

\newif\if@runningheaders \@runningheaderstrue
\DeclareOption{runningheaders}{\@runningheaderstrue}
\DeclareOption{norunningheaders}{\@runningheadersfalse}

centerheadline nocenterheadline These control the centering of the running headers. If this option is chosen, only one of the marks will be displayed and it will be centered.

\newif\if@centerheadline \@centerheadlinetrue
\DeclareOption{centerheadline}{\@centerheadlinetrue}
\DeclareOption{nocenterheadline}{\@centerheadlinefalse}

headline noheadline These control the display of a horizontal line below the running headers at the top of the page.

\newif\if@headline \@headlinetrue
\DeclareOption{headline}{\@headlinetrue}
\DeclareOption{noheadline}{\@headlinefalse}

starmark nostarmark This option provides for a departure from the standard class marking mechanism that causes the starred version of \chapter*, \section* etc. commands to call \chapterstarmark, \sectionstarmark etc. This allows these to reset the markings without the user explicitly having to include this.
19.9 Equation numbering on the left

The option `leqno` can be used to get the equation numbers on the left side of the equation. It loads code which is generated automatically from the kernel files when the format is built. If the equation number does get a special formatting then instead of using the kernel file the class would need to provide the code explicitly.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareOption{leqno}{\input{leqno.clo}}
\end{verbatim}

19.10 Flush left displays

The option `fleqn` redefines the displayed math environments in such a way that they come out flush left, with an indentation of `\mathindent` from the prevailing left margin. It loads code which is generated automatically from the kernel files when the format is built.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareOption{fleqn}{\input{fleqn.clo}}
\end{verbatim}

19.11 Title page

These options affect the display of the title page.

\begin{verbatim}
\newif\if@uppertitle \@uppertitlefalse
\DeclareOption{uppertitle}{\@uppertitletrue \@uppersubtitletrue}
\DeclareOption{nouppertitle}{\@uppertitlefalse \@uppersubtitlefalse}
\newif\if@uppersubtitle \@uppersubtitlefalse
\DeclareOption{uppersubtitle}{\@uppersubtitletrue}
\DeclareOption{nouppersubtitle}{\@uppersubtitlefalse}
\newif\if@upperauthor \@upperauthorfalse
\DeclareOption{upperauthor}{\@upperauthortrue}
\DeclareOption{noupperauthor}{\@upperauthorfalse}
\newif\if@upperdegreetitle \@upperdegreetitletrue
\DeclareOption{upperdegreetitle}{\@upperdegreetitletrue}
\DeclareOption{noupperdegreetitle}{\@upperdegreetitlefalse}
\newif\if@uppertitletext \@uppertitletexttrue
\DeclareOption{uppertitletext}{\@uppertitletexttrue}
\DeclareOption{nouppertitletext}{\@uppertitletextfalse}
\newif\if@upperfaculty \@upperfacultyfalse
\DeclareOption{upperfaculty}{\@upperfacultytrue}
\DeclareOption{noupperfaculty}{\@upperfacultyfalse}
\newif\if@upperdepartment \@upperdepartmentfalse
\DeclareOption{upperdepartment}{\@upperdepartmenttrue}
\DeclareOption{noupperdepartment}{\@upperdepartmentfalse}
\newif\if@upperprogram \@upperprogramfalse
\DeclareOption{upperprogram}{\@upperprogramtrue}
\DeclareOption{noupperprogram}{\@upperprogramfalse}
\newif\if@upperinstitution \@upperinstitutionfalse
\DeclareOption{upperinstitution}{\@upperinstitutiontrue}
\end{verbatim}
These options change the title of the degree according to the type of degree. The \degreetitle command can be used to override this.

\DeclareOption{phd}{\degreetitle{Doctor of Philosophy}\numberofsignatures{4}}
\DeclareOption{msc}{\degreetitle{Master of Science}\numberofsignatures{2}}
\DeclareOption{masc}{\degreetitle{Master of Applied Science}\numberofsignatures{2}}
\DeclareOption{ma}{\degreetitle{Master of Arts}\numberofsignatures{2}}
\DeclareOption{meng}{\degreetitle{Master of Engineering}\numberofsignatures{2}}

These options control the display of an institution logo on the title page. You must define the graphic to be used by using the \institutionlogo command. NOTE: UBC Faculty of Grad Studies, as of late 2004, no longer permits this on the title page!

\DeclareOption{logo}{\logotrue}
\DeclareOption{nologo}{\logofalse}

These determine if the section headings are uppercase and if chapter headings should be displayed before the chapter title.

\DeclareOption{chapterheads}{\@chapterheadstrue}
\DeclareOption{nochapterheads}{\@chapterheadstrue
\DeclareOption{nochapterheads}{\@chapterheadstrue
\DeclareOption{nochapterheads}{\@chapterheadstrue

19.12 Headings
These determine if the section headings are uppercase and if part headings should be displayed before the part title.

\newif\if@partheads \@partheadstrue
\DeclareOption{partheads}{\@partheadstrue}
\DeclareOption{nopartheads}{\@partheadsfalse}

These options determine if the numbers should be displayed in the chapter and part headings.

\DeclareOption{headcount}{\@headcounttrue}
\DeclareOption{noheadcount}{\@headcountfalse}

These options determine if the headings (part, chapter, sections etc.) should be converted to uppercase. This option is good if the font size of the headings is not much larger than the body text.

\newif\if@upper \@upperfalse
\DeclareOption{upper}{\@uppertrue}
\DeclareOption{noupper}{\@upperfalse}

These options determine if the table of contents should be converted to italics for chapters not in main matter.

\newif\if@tocitalic \@tocitalicfalse
\DeclareOption{tocitalic}{\@tocitalictrue}
\DeclareOption{notocitalic}{\@tocitalicfalse}

These options determine if the table of contents should be converted to uppercase.

\DeclareOption{tocupper}{\@tocuppertrue}
\DeclareOption{notocupper}{\@tocupperfalse}

These options affect the display of several things including the part pages and headers. This uses the variable \@headingalignment.

\newcommand\@headingalignment{\raggedright}
\DeclareOption{leftheads}{\renewcommand\@headingalignment{\raggedleft}}
\DeclareOption{centerheads}{\renewcommand\@headingalignment{\centering}}
\DeclareOption{rightheads}{\renewcommand\@headingalignment{\raggedright}}

These options determine whether or not figure and table captions should “hang”. Hanging captions are justified so that all the caption text comes after the caption label.

\newif\if@hangingcaptions \@hangingcaptionsfalse
\DeclareOption{hangingcaptions}{\@hangingcaptionstrue}
\DeclareOption{nohangingcaptions}{\@hangingcaptionsfalse}

19.13 Figures and Tables

\newcommand\@headingalignment{\raggedright}
19.14 Footnotes

This enables or disables the resetting of footnote numbering within each chapter.

\newif\ifchapternotereset \@chapternoteresettrue
\DeclareOption{chapternotereset}{\@chapternoteresettrue}
\DeclareOption{nochapternotereset}{\@chapternoteresetfalse}

19.15 Bibliography

This turns on or off the chapter numbering of the bibliography. It does not force a number if the bibliography is after the \backmatter command.

\newif\if@bibnum \@bibnumtrue
\DeclareOption{bibnum}{\@bibnumtrue}
\DeclareOption{nobibnum}{\@bibnumfalse}

This makes the bibliography a section rather than a chapter. Its main use is with the similar option in the chapterbib and natbib packages for use with manuscript theses.

\newif\if@sectionbib \@sectionbibfalse
\DeclareOption{sectionbib}{\@sectionbibtrue}

19.16 Appendix

These options affect whether or not the Appendices are a separate “part” or just additional chapters. If it is true, then the \appendix command inserts a new part with the name \appendicesname.

If you just want a divider in the table of contents, use the appendicestoc option.

\newif\if@appendixpart \@appendixpartfalse
\DeclareOption{appendixpart}{\@appendixparttrue}
\DeclareOption{noappendixpart}{\@appendixpartfalse}

These decide if the appendices should have a separate page if they are actually chapters. If appendixpart is chosen then this has no effect since parts are already put on a separate page.

\newif\if@appendixpage \@appendixpagetrue
\DeclareOption{appendixpage}{\@appendixpagetrue}
\DeclareOption{noappendixpage}{\@appendixpagetrue}

These options affect whether or not the a divider with the name \appendicesname appears in the table of contents before the appendices. This is not needed if the appendixpart option is used because then a part is inserted with the name \appendicesname.

\newif\if@appendicestoc \@appendicestocfalse
\DeclareOption{appendicestoc}{\@appendicestoctrue}
\DeclareOption{noappendicestoc}{\@appendicestocfalse}

73
19.17 Open bibliography

The option \texttt{openbib} produces the “open” bibliography style, in which each block
starts on a new line, and succeeding lines in a block are indented by \texttt{bibindent}.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareOption{openbib}{%
First some hook into the bibliography environment is filled.
\AtEndOfPackage{%
\renewcommand\@openbib@code{
\advance\leftmargin\bibindent
\itemindent -\bibindent
\listparindent \itemindent
\parsep \z@}
}%
In addition the definition of \texttt{\newblock} is overwritten.
\renewcommand\newblock{\par}}%
}\end{verbatim}

19.18 Crosshairs on empty pages.

These toggle between crosshair and nocrosshair modes. The crosshair mode puts
a large X on empty pages. (Pages with pagestyle \texttt{empty}).

\begin{verbatim}
\if@crosshair \@crosshairfalse
\DeclareOption{nocrosshair}{\@crosshairfalse}
\DeclareOption{crosshair}{\@crosshairtrue}
\end{verbatim}

19.19 Font Options

These are different options for document fonts and spacings in the section headings
etc.

\begin{verbatim}
\DeclareOption{defaultfonts}{
\renewcommand\titlepagefont{\normalsize}
\renewcommand\titlefont{\Large \textbf{}}
\renewcommand\subtitlefont{\large \textbf{}}
\renewcommand\institutionfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\abstractfont{\large \slshape}
\renewcommand\partfont{\Huge \textbf{}}
\renewcommand\partnamefont{\Huge \slshape}
\renewcommand\chapterfont{\Huge \textbf{}}
\renewcommand\chaptertitlefont{\Huge \textbf{}}
\renewcommand\chapterauthorfont{\large}
\renewcommand\sectionfont{\Large\textbf{}}
\renewcommand\subsectionfont{\Large\textbf{}}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionfont{\normalsize\textbf{}}
\renewcommand\paragraphfont{\normalsize\textbf{}}
}\end{verbatim}
\renewcommand\subparagraphfont{\normalsize\bfseries}
\renewcommand\translatorfont{}
\renewcommand\theoremheaderfont{\upshape}
\renewcommand\theorembodyfont{}
\renewcommand\itemfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\examplefont{}
\renewcommand\headingstextfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\pagenumberfont{}
\renewcommand\captionheaderfont{}
\renewcommand\captionbodyfont{}
\renewcommand\figurefont{}
\renewcommand\tablefont{}
\setlength{\partbetweenskip}{20pt}
\setlength{\chapterbeforeskip}{30pt}
\setlength{\chapterbetweenskip}{20pt}
\setlength{\chapterafterskip}{30pt}
\renewcommand\sectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\sectionbeforeskip{-3.5ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\sectionafterskip{2.3ex \@plus .2ex}
\renewcommand\subsectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\subsectionbeforeskip{-3.25ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsectionafterskip{1.5ex \@plus .2ex}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionbeforeskip{-3.25ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionafterskip{1.5ex \@plus .2ex}
\setlength{\partbetweenskip}{20pt}
\setlength{\chapterbeforeskip}{30pt}
\setlength{\chapterbetweenskip}{20pt}
\setlength{\chapterafterskip}{30pt}
\renewcommand\sectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\sectionbeforeskip{-3.5ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\sectionafterskip{2.3ex \@plus .2ex}
\renewcommand\subsectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\subsectionbeforeskip{-3.25ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsectionafterskip{1.5ex \@plus .2ex}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionbeforeskip{-3.25ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionafterskip{1.5ex \@plus .2ex}
\DeclareOption{slanted}{
\renewcommand\titlefont{\LARGE}
\renewcommand\abstractfont{\large\slshape}
\renewcommand\subtitlefont{\large}
\renewcommand\authorfont{}
\renewcommand\degreetitlefont{\large}
\renewcommand\partfont{\Large}
\renewcommand\chapterfont{\large}
\renewcommand\chaptitelfont{\large}
\renewcommand\chapterauthorfont{\large}
\renewcommand\sectionfont{\large\slshape}
\renewcommand\subsectionfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\paragraphfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\subparagraphfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\institutionfont{\slshape}
}
\renewcommand\translatorfont{}
\renewcommand\theoremheaderfont{\upshape}
\renewcommand\theorembodyfont{}
\renewcommand\itemfont{\slshape}
\renewcommand\examplefont{}
\renewcommand\headingstextfont{\small\slshape}
\renewcommand\pagenumberfont{\small}
\renewcommand\captionheaderfont{\slshape\small}
\renewcommand\captionbodyfont{\small}
\renewcommand\figurefont{}
\renewcommand\tablefont{}
\setlength{\partbetweenskip}{20pt}
\setlength{\chapterbeforeskip}{30pt}
\setlength{\chapterbetweenskip}{20pt}
\setlength{\chapterafterskip}{30pt}
\renewcommand\sectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\sectionbeforeskip{-3.5ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\sectionafterskip{2.3ex \@plus0.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\subsectionbeforeskip{-3.25ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsectionafterskip{1.5ex \@plus0.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionbeforeskip{-3.25ex \@plus -1ex \@minus -.2ex}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionafterskip{1.5ex \@plus0.2ex}
\renewcommand\paragraphindent{\z@}
\renewcommand\paragraphbeforeskip{3.25ex \@plus0.2ex \@minus0.2ex}
\renewcommand\paragraphafterskip{-1em}
\renewcommand\subparagraphindent{\parindent}
\renewcommand\subparagraphbeforeskip{3.25ex \@plus0.2ex \@minus0.2ex}
\renewcommand\subparagraphafterskip{-1em}
\DeclareOption{bold}{%  
\renewcommand\titlefont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\subtitlefont{\large\bfseries}
\renewcommand\abstractfont{\Large\bfseries}
\renewcommand\authorfont{}
\renewcommand\degreetitlefont{\Large\bfseries}
\renewcommand\partfont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\chapterfont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\chaptertitlefont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\chapterauthorfont{\large}
\renewcommand\sectionfont{\Large\bfseries}
\renewcommand\sectortitlefont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\sectionauthorfont{\large}
\renewcommand\subsectionfont{\large\bfseries}
\renewcommand\subsectiontitlefont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\subsectionauthorfont{\large}
\renewcommand\subsubsectionfont{\bfseries}
\renewcommand\subsubsectiontitlefont{\LARGE\bfseries}
\renewcommand\paragraphfont{\bfseries}
\renewcommand\paragraphtitlefont{\bfseries}
\renewcommand\subparagraphfont{\bfseries}
\renewcommand\subparagraphtitlefont{\bfseries}
\renewcommand\translatorfont{}}
20 Executing Options

Here we execute the default options to initialize certain variables. Note that we need the percent signs to break the lines.

\ExecuteOptions{\renewcommand\parindent{0em}
The `\ProcessOptions` command causes the execution of the code for every option `FOO` which is declared and for which the user typed the `FOO` option in his `\documentclass` command. For every option `BAR` he typed, which is not declared, the option is assumed to be a global option. All options will be passed as document options to any `\usepackage` command in the document preamble.

Here we use the starred form so that options are loaded in the order they are specified rather than the order in which they are defined. This allows the flavours to implement different default options by simply calling `\ExecuteOptions` before the options are processed.

\ProcessOptions*\relax

Now that all the options have been executed we can load the chosen class option file that contains all size dependent code. This information is the same as that specified for the book class in the files `bk10.clo`, `bk11.clo` and `bk12.clo`.

\input{bk1@ptsize.clo}

### 21 Loading Packages

If a logo is to be displayed on the titlepage, then the `graphics` package must be loaded.

\iflogo\RequirePackage{graphics}\fi

### 22 Document Layout

In this section we are finally dealing with the nasty typographical details.

#### 22.1 Pagination

Theses are usually pretty rigid in their pagination requirements. One potential gotcha in the class is resetting the page numbers. This should always be done after a call to `\cleardoublepage` or `\blankdoublepage` to make sure that the numbers start from an odd number on a true odd page.

#### 22.2 Paragraphing

These parameters control \TeX's behaviour when two lines tend to come too close together.

\setlength\lineskip{1\p@}
\setlength\normallineskip{1\p@}

This is used as a multiplier for `\baselineskip`. The default is to not stretch the baselines. Note that if this command doesn’t resolve to “empty” any plus or minus part in the specification of `\baselineskip` is ignored.

\renewcommand\baselinestretch{}`
\texttt{\parskip} \texttt{\parindent} gives extra vertical space between paragraphs and \texttt{\parindent} is the width of the paragraph indentation. The value of \texttt{\parindent} depends on whether we are in two column mode.

\texttt{\setlength{\parskip}{0\p@ \@plus \p@}}

\texttt{\@lowpenalty} The commands \texttt{\nopagebreak} and \texttt{\nolinebreak} put in penalties to discourage these breaks at the point they are put in. They use \texttt{\@lowpenalty}, \texttt{\@medpenalty} or \texttt{\@highpenalty}, dependent on their argument.

\texttt{\@lowpenalty 51}
\texttt{\@medpenalty 151}
\texttt{\@highpenalty 301}

\texttt{\clubpenalty} These penalties are use to discourage club and widow lines. Because we use their default values we only show them here, commented out.

\texttt{\\clubpenalty 150}
\texttt{\\widowpenalty 150}
\texttt{\\\displaywidowpenalty 50}
\texttt{\\predisplaypenalty 10000}
\texttt{\\postdisplaypenalty 0}

\texttt{\\interlinepenalty} Allow the breaking of a page in the middle of a paragraph.
\texttt{\\\interlinepenalty 0}

\texttt{\\brokenpenalty} We allow the breaking of a page after a hyphenated line.
\texttt{\\\brokenpenalty 100}

\section{Page Layout}
All margin dimensions are measured from a point one inch from the top and lefthand side of the page.

\subsection{Float placement parameters}
All float parameters are given default values in the \LaTeX{} kernel. For this reason parameters that are not counters need to be set with \texttt{\renewcommand}.

\texttt{\\@topnumber} The \texttt{\topnumber} counter holds the maximum number of floats that can appear on the top of a text page.
\texttt{\\setcounter{\topnumber}{2}}
\topfraction \text{This indicates the maximum part of a text page that can be occupied by floats at the top.}
\renewcommand{\topfraction}{.7}

\c@bottomnumber \text{The bottomnumber counter holds the maximum number of floats that can appear on the bottom of a text page.}
\setcounter{bottomnumber}{1}

\bottomfraction \text{This indicates the maximum part of a text page that can be occupied by floats at the bottom.}
\renewcommand{\bottomfraction}{.3}

\c@totalnumber \text{This indicates the maximum number of floats that can appear on any text page.}
\setcounter{totalnumber}{3}

\textfraction \text{This indicates the minimum part of a text page that has to be occupied by text.}
\renewcommand{\textfraction}{.2}

\floatpagefraction \text{This indicates the minimum part of a page that has to be occupied by floating objects before a ‘float page’ is produced.}
\renewcommand{\floatpagefraction}{.5}

\c@dbltopnumber \text{The dbltopnumber counter holds the maximum number of two column floats that can appear on the top of a two column text page.}
\setcounter{dbltopnumber}{2}

\dbltopfraction \text{This indicates the maximum part of a two column text page that can be occupied by two column floats at the top.}
\renewcommand{\dbltopfraction}{.7}

\dblfloatpagefraction \text{This indicates the minimum part of a page that has to be occupied by two column wide floating objects before a ‘float page’ is produced.}
\renewcommand{\dblfloatpagefraction}{.5}

\section{Page Styles}

The page style \texttt{foo} is defined by defining the command \texttt{\ps@foo}. These commands are used by the \texttt{\pagestyle} and \texttt{\thispagestyle} macros defined in the \LaTeX\ source \texttt{ltpage.dtx}. This command should make only local definitions. There should be no stray spaces in the definition, since they could lead to mysterious extra spaces in the output (well, that’s something that should be always avoided).

The genthesis class provides some options that affect how the pagestyles are displayed. In particular, allowing consistent control of page number location with both headings and plain.

\@evenhead \text{The \ps@... command defines the macros \texttt{@oddhead}, \texttt{@oddfoot}, \texttt{@evenhead}, and \texttt{@evenfoot} to define the running heads and feet—e.g., \texttt{@oddhead} is the macro to produce the contents of the heading box for odd-numbered pages. It is called inside an \texttt{\hbox} of width \texttt{\textwidth}.}
22.4.1 Marking conventions

This section is mostly taken from \texttt{ltpage.dtx}. It describes the \LaTeX\ way of doing things. We may change this later, but for now we try to comply.

One thing we do differently is provide a way to change the headers for unnumbered chapters and sections. In the standard \LaTeX\ classes, if you follow a numbered chapter by an unnumbered chapter, the headings will not be altered. (The bibliography was special and provided an explicit call to \texttt{@mkboth} in order to reset the headings.) The user would have to explicitly call \texttt{\markboth} as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
  \% \chapter*{Preface}\markboth{Preface}{}\%
\%
\end{verbatim}

We instead provide an option \texttt{starmark/nostarmark} that will allow for the following additional marking commands to be used.

To make headings determined by the sectioning commands, the page style defines the commands \texttt{\chaptermark}, \texttt{\sectionmark}, \ldots, where \texttt{\chaptermark{⟨TEXT⟩}} is called by \texttt{\chapter} to set a mark, and so on.

The \texttt{\...mark} commands and the \texttt{\...head} macros are defined with the help of the following macros. (All the \texttt{\...mark} commands should be initialized to no-ops.) \LaTeX\ extends \TeX\'s \texttt{\mark} facility by producing two kinds of marks, a ‘left’ and a ‘right’ mark, using the following commands:

\begin{verbatim}
  \texttt{\markboth{⟨LEFT⟩}{⟨RIGHT⟩}}: Adds both marks.
  \texttt{\markright{⟨RIGHT⟩}}: Adds a ‘right’ mark.
  \texttt{\leftmark}: Used in the \texttt{@oddhead}, \texttt{@oddfoot}, \texttt{@evenhead} or \texttt{@evenfoot} macros, it gets the current ‘left’ mark. \texttt{\leftmark} works like \TeX\'s \texttt{\botmark} command.
  \texttt{\rightmark}: Used in the \texttt{@oddhead}, \texttt{@oddfoot}, \texttt{@evenhead} or \texttt{@evenfoot} macros, it gets the current ‘right’ mark. \texttt{\rightmark} works like \TeX\'s \texttt{\firstmark} command.
\end{verbatim}

The marking commands work reasonably well for right marks ‘numbered within’ left marks—e.g., the left mark is changed by a \texttt{\chapter} command and the right mark is changed by a \texttt{\section} command. However, it does produce somewhat anomalous results if two \texttt{\markboth}’s occur on the same page.

Commands like \texttt{\tableofcontents} that should set the marks in some page styles use a \texttt{\@mkboth} command, which is \texttt{@let} by the pagestyle command (\texttt{\ps@...}) to \texttt{\markboth} for setting the heading or to \texttt{@gobbletwo} to do nothing.

(Translation: This is all very confusing, but well explained in the documentation to the fancyhdr class found in \texttt{fancyhdr.dtx}. \LaTeX\ has some annoying “features” as described there, but our philosophy here is to stick to normal \TeX, so we use the default book style format with the pagernumber placement option.)

22.4.2 Pagestyle Options

The following options affect the location of page numbers: \texttt{pagenumBC}, \texttt{pagenumBR}, \texttt{pagenumTR}. The options are “B”/“T” for Bottom/Top and “C”/“R” for Center/Right. These are selected from the cases defined in Section \ref{section:19.4}.
22.4.3 Defining the page styles

The default pagestyles empty and plain are defined in ltpage.dtx while the default pagestyle headings is defined in the classes.dtx.

We modify those definitions here to provide a consistent method for modifying the format and location of the page numbers. The standard classes have page numbers at the bottom for plain but at the top corner for headings.

```latex
\headlinespace
This is the separation between the running header text and the line under it if the headline option is used.
```

```latex
\newlength{\headlinespace}
\setlength{\headlinespace}{5pt}
```

```latex
\v@strut
This is a vertical strut that extends the height of the letter “y”—i.e. it extends below the baseline—in the correct heading font. This is used so that the headline (if used) is placed consistently: otherwise, it might juggle up and down depending on the depth of the current heading. We need the extra parens to prevent the font from leaking out.
```

```latex
\newcommand{\v@strut}{\headingstextfont \vphantom{y}}
```

```latex
\ps@empty
The definition of the page style empty is given in ltpage.dtx and does not put anything. If the university requires page numbering on every page, then the specific flavour may wish to redefine this to plain.
```

```latex
\ps@plain
The definition of the page style plain has to be different for two sided printing than it is for one sided printing. All it displays is the page number: no headline and no marks.

We start with the two-sided pagestyle definitions
```

```latex
\if@twoside
\def\ps@plain{%
Both header and feet are empty except for the page number. No lines are drawn for the plain pagestyle.
```

```latex
\ifcase\pagesnumberstyle\relax % Page number Bottom Center
\def@oddfoot{\hfil{\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfil}%
\let@evenfoot@oddfoot%
\let@oddhead@empty%
\let@evenhead@empty%
\or % Page number Bottom Outside
\def@oddfoot{\hfil{\pagenumberfont\thepage}}%
\def@evenfoot{{\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfil}%
\let@oddhead@empty%
\let@evenhead@empty%
\else % Page number Top Outside
\let@oddfoot@empty%
\let@evenfoot@empty%
\def@oddhead{\hfil{\pagenumberfont\thepage}}%
\def@evenhead{{\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfil}%
\fi
\fi
```

83
The definition of \ps@plain for one sided printing can be much simpler, because we treat even and odd pages the same. Therefore we don’t need to define \@even...

\else\def\ps@plain{%
\ifcase\@pagesnumberstyle\relax % Page number Bottom Center
\def\@oddfoot{\hfil\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfil%\let\@oddhead\@empty%
\or % Page number Bottom Outside
\def\@oddfoot{\hfil\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfil%\let\@oddhead\@empty%
\else % Page number Top Outside
\let\@oddfoot\@empty%
\def\@oddhead{\hfil\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfil%\fi
\fi
}

\ps@headings
The definition of the page style headings has to be different for two sided printing than it is for one sided printing. It is also much more complicated because all of the marking conventions must be defined.

\if@twoside
\def\ps@headings{%
Here, the feet may contain the page number (nothing else) while the head may contain the page number as well as one of the marks. We enclose the head in a box and put a line underneath if the headline option is selected. If the centerheadline option is selected, the mark is centered.

To prevent code duplication, we first define the headers without page numbers, then redefine them if the page number is up top.

\def\@evenhead{%
\parbox{\textwidth}{%
\makebox[\textwidth]{%
\hfill\headingstextfont\leftmark\hfill%\if@centerheadline\hfill\fi%\v@strut%
}\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%
}%
}%
\def\@oddhead{%
\parbox{\textwidth}{%
\makebox[\textwidth]{%
\if@centerheadline\hfill\fi%{\headingstextfont\rightmark}\hfill\v@strut%
}\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%
}%
}%

\fi
\fi

84
When using this page style, the contents of the running head is determined by
the chapter and section titles. So we \let \@mkboth to \markboth.

\let\@mkboth\markboth

We use the \chaptermark (and possibly \sectionmark in the future) macros
to fill the running heads.

Note the use of ##1 for the parameter of the \chaptermark command, which
will be defined when \ps@headings is executed.
The definition of \ps@headings for one sided printing can be much simpler, because we treat even and odd pages the same. Therefore we don’t need to define \@even. Only the left mark is included in the header now.

The definition of \ps@headings for one sided printing can be much simpler, because we treat even and odd pages the same. Therefore we don’t need to define \@even. Only the left mark is included in the header now.

We use \markright now instead of \markboth as we did for two sided printing.
This is the pagestyle used for a draft version. The headers are modified so that they display the current date and time of the draft.

\if@twoside
\def\ps@draft{%
\def\@evenhead{%
\parbox{\textwidth}{%\makebox[\textwidth]{%\hfill{%\headingstextfont\draftname: ‘‘\jobname’’}%\pagenumberfont --- \today\ \now}%\hfill\v@strut%}%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%}
%}
%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%}
%\def\@oddhead{%
\parbox{\textwidth}{%\makebox[\textwidth]{%\if@centerheadline\hfill\fi{%\pagenumberfont\today\ \now\ ---}%\headingstextfont\draftname: ‘‘\jobname’’}%\hfill\v@strut%}%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%}
%}
%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%
%\def\@oddfoot{%}
%\makebox[\textwidth]{%\if@centerheadline\hfill\fi{%\pagenumberfont\today\ \now\ ---}%\headingstextfont\draftname: ‘‘\jobname’’}%\hfill\v@strut%}
%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%}
%\ifcase\@pagesnumberstyle\relax % Page number Bottom Center
\def\@oddfoot{%\hfill{\pagenumberfont\thepage}\hfill%\hfill\v@strut%}
%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%}
%\if@headline\vspace{\headlinespace}\hrule\fi%
%\let\@evenfoot\@oddfoot%
\ps@draft
The crosshair option puts a large X on any page with pagestyle clear. This option is taken from the thesis class.

\if@crosshair
\def\clap#1{\hbox to 0pt{\hss#1\hss}}
\newdimen@crosshairrule
\@crosshairrule=.24pt
\def\@crosshairs{\vbox to
Opt{\hasize=Opt\baselineskip=Opt\lineskip=Opt \vss \clap{\vrule
height .125in width @crosshairrule depth Opt} \clap{\vrule
width .25in height @crosshairrule depth Opt} \clap{\vrule
height .125in width @crosshairrule depth Opt} \vss}}
\def\ps@clear{%
\let@oddfoot@empty\let@evenfoot@empty
\def@oddhead@hfill\raise@headheight@crosshairs
\let@evenhead@empty\oddhead}
\fi
\ps@myheadings The definition of the page style myheadings is fairly simple because the user determines the contents of the running head himself by using the \markboth and \markright commands.
\def\ps@myheadings{%
\let@oddfoot@empty\let@evenfoot@empty
\let@oddhead@hfill\raise@headheight@crosshairs
\let@evenhead@empty
We have to make sure that the marking commands that are used by the chapter and section headings are disabled. We do this by setting them to a macro that gobbles its argument(s).

\let\@mkboth\@gobbletwo
\let\chaptermark\@gobble
\let\sectionmark\@gobble
\let\chapterstarmark\@gobble
\let\sectionstarmark\@gobble

\newif\if@suppressblankpage
\@suppressblankpagefalse

\section{Blank Page}

Here we add some macros to facilitate inserting blank pages. Blank pages are required before chapter headings if the openrightblank option is specified. This presents a bit of a challenge with the pagination requirements of the \frontmatter command as this must set the first page of the chapter to “1”, but the chapter may insert new blank pages. To deal with this, we have the \frontmatter command insert the blank pages and set a flag \if@suppressblankpage that the chapters etc. should check to prevent inserting extra pages.

\if@suppressblankpage If this is true, then a blank page has been inserted and new ones should not be inserted. This is used by \frontmatter for example to insert a blank page and then change the pagination.
\texttt{\verb+\blankpage+} Insert a truly blank page. This also sets \texttt{\@suppressblankpagetrue} so that future calls do not insert an additional blank page. This is reset by \texttt{\clearp@ge} which is called at the start of each chapter.

\begin{verbatim}
1014 \newcommand{\blankpage}{%
1015 \clearpage\thispagestyle{empty}\hbox{}\newpage
1016 \@suppressblankpagetrue
1017 }
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\verb+\blankdoublepage+} Insert a truly blank page or two to ensure that the next page will open on the right hand side with a blank facing page.

\begin{verbatim}
1018 \newcommand{\blankdoublepage}{
1019 \blankpage\thispagestyle{empty}\cleardoublepage
1020 }
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\verb+\clearp@ge+} This macro is used internally before parts and chapters to insert a blank page, if the \texttt{openrightblank} option is used etc. It check the \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} flag and resets it when done.

\begin{verbatim}
1021 \newcommand{\clearp@ge}{%
1022 \if@twoside
1023 \if@openright
1024 \if@openrightblank
1025 \if@supressblankpage
1026 \cleardoublepage \% Just in case
1027 \else
1028 \blankdoublepage
1029 \fi
1030 \else
1031 \cleardoublepage
1032 \fi
1033 \else
1034 \clearpage
1035 \fi
1036 \else
1037 \clearpage
1038 \fi
1039 \@suppressblankpagefalse
1040 }
\end{verbatim}

\section{Document Markup}

\subsection{Hooks}

To allow the other classes to alter the behaviour of the thesis class, we provide a bunch of hooks which are very similar to \texttt{\AtBeginDocument} etc.

\begin{verbatim}
1041 \newcommand{\@starttitlepagehook}{
\end{verbatim}
23.2 Title Page

The principle formatting for the titlepage should be done by redefining the command \titlepage. Note that this command will be called at least twice to determine how much space the titlepage takes up, thus, one should not define new commands within the \titlepage command. The two sample classes provide two different titlepages. Modifications are fairly simple using these as templates.

23.2.1 Margins

These specify the margins for the titlepage. Using rubber space in the titlepage will push things out to these margins.

\setlength{\titlemarginleft}{1.5in}
\setlength{\titlemarginright}{1.5in}
\setlength{\titlemargintop}{1.5in}
\setlength{\titlemarginbottom}{1.5in}

This command prints out as many signature lines as dictated by the argument. This is used on the titlepage.

\setlength{\titlemarginleft}{1.5in}
\setlength{\titlemarginright}{1.5in}
\setlength{\titlemargintop}{1.5in}
\setlength{\titlemarginbottom}{1.5in}

\count0=0
\loop\ifnum\count0<#1 \advance\count0 by 1
\begin{minipage}{4in}
\par
\vspace{.25in}
\hbox to 4in{\dotfill}
\end{minipage}
The macro `\logofile` is used to specify the name of a graphic file to use on the titlepage.

```latex
\def\@logofile{\@latex@warning@no@line{No \noexpand\logofile\ given}}
\newcommand*{\logofile}[1]{\gdef\@logofile{#1}}
```

This macro is used in the document to produce the titlepage. The titlepage produced here has been approved by the UBC FoGS.

```latex
\maketitle
```

The titlepage should be on its own page opening left:

```latex
\pagestyle{empty}\cleardoublepage
```

It should also display no headers or page numbers, and be a single column: the `\@startonecolumn` also stores the old margins etc.

```latex
\thispagestyle{empty}
\@startonecolumn
```

Now we remove indenting.

```latex
\setlength{\parindent}{0pt}
```

We would really like to keep the titlepage together on one page. To do this, we could put it in a minipage and we center the contents vertically. This way, if the titlepage is slightly too large, it will just reduce the margins on the top and bottom slightly. (An overfull warning will still be triggered however.) Unfortunately, this does not work and I do not know why, so I use a `vbox` instead.

Note: we do not set `\topskip` to zero: this should be done to make a truly full-sized title page.

The left-right margins must be respected however.

```latex
\setlength{\textwidth}{\paperwidth}
\addtolength{\textwidth}{-\titlemarginleft}
\addtolength{\textwidth}{-\titlemarginright}
\setlength{\oddsidemargin}{\titlemarginleft}
\addtolength{\oddsidemargin}{-1.0in}
\setlength{\evensidemargin}{\oddsidemargin}
```

Shift the page slightly if the `\twoside` option is provided.

```latex
\if@twoside
\setlength{\@tempdima}{\paperwidth}
\addtolength{\@tempdima}{-\textwidth}
\addtolength{\oddsidemargin}{-.1\@tempdima}
\addtolength{\evensidemargin}{.1\@tempdima}
\fi
```

```latex
\setlength{\textheight}{\paperheight}
\addtolength{\textheight}{-\titlemarginintop}
\addtolength{\textheight}{-\titlemarginbottom}
```
Here we need to reset the basic TeX parameters to actually ensure that the
margin changing etc. has an effect.

\setlength{\@colht}{\textheight} \\
\setlength{\@colroom}{\textwidth} \\
\setlength{\vsize}{\textheight} \\
\setlength{\columnwidth}{\textwidth} \\
\setlength{\hsize}{\columnwidth} \\
\setlength{\linewidth}{\hsize}

For the titlepage, we start with single spacing. This will be restored by
\@restorepageparams.

Note: in order for \baselinestretch to take effect, the font must be rese-
lected. Here this is done with \titlepagefont but at the end we must explicitly
call \selectfont to force the calculation.

\renewcommand{\baselinestretch}{1}
\titlepagefont

Now we call the titlepage hook to do things like set the page counter.

\@starttitlepagehook

We put the whole titlepage into a \vbox that is given the same height
\textheight. For some reason it does not work to put the page into a mini-
page: the minipage just lets the text extend way to far. (I am not sure why...)

One problem with the vbox approach is that if the box is overfull, then it is not
centered vertically. The minipage is still centered vertically, even if it is overfull.

Presently the error calculations are useless because the vbox is set to the
\textheight. There is probably a way to catch this, but I am not sure how.

This also prevents overflow onto a new page. If the titlepage is too big, then
we print an overfull message to the user. If the titlepage is larger than the physical
page we issue an error.

Note that \copy0 is used to copy the contents of \box0 because using \box0
destroys the contents.

\% Local scope for error calculations.
\setbox0=\vbox to\textheight{\vspace{0pt plus 1filll}\par% 
\titlepage\par% 
\vspace{0pt plus 1filll}}
\settoheight{\dimen0}{\copy0}
\settodepth{\dimen1}{\box0}
\addtolength{\dimen0}{\dimen1}
\addtolength{\dimen0}{-\textheight} \\
\addtolength{\dimen0}{-\paperheight}
\ifdim0pt<\dimen0
\ClassWarning{genthesis}{Overfull titlepage by \the\dimen0}
Reset column mode. We must do this after the new page has been specified with \clearpage. This also restores the margins etc.

\clearpage
\@endonecolumn
\@aftertitlepagehook

Here we reset the line spacing and other page parameters: Note: in order for \baselinestretch to take effect, the font must be reselected. Here this is done with an explicit call to \selectfont to force the calculation.

\normalfont
\normalsize

We reset the footnote counter, disable \thanks and \maketitle and save some storage space by emptying the internal information macros.

\setcounter{footnote}{0}\
\global\let\thanks\relax
\global\let\maketitle\relax
\global\let@thanks\@empty

After the title is set the declaration commands \title, etc. can vanish.

\global\let\title\relax \global\let\author\relax
\global\let\date\relax
\@AtStartOfTitlepage{\setcounter{page}\@ne}

\titlepage

Here is a default definition for \titlepage. This should be redefined to suit each institution.

We center the entire title vertically. \vfil is a vertical space (or glue) of infinite stretchability: It will expand and push the page down. An accompanying \vfil at the bottom will push up and the page will be centered. Note that \vfill works the same way, but that \vfill is “more infinite” than \vfil so a \vfill will always collapse a \vfil. The \null must be used because, at the top of a new page, rubber space is normally eaten.

\providecommand{\titlepage}{
\null\vfil

Then we set the title in the \titlefont; leave a little space, the, if a subtitle has been defined, we put in \subtitlefont, then after a little space we put
“by”, then leave some space and set the author(s) in `\authorfont`. We do this inside a tabular environment to get them in a single column. Then we list the previous degrees. We do this in a tabular environment so that the extra newline does not give a problem. Before the date we leave a little whitespace again.

The title page is always centered, regardless of the `center` option.

```latex
\begin{center}
\{\titlefont \@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}\par\}
\vspace{1em}
\if@subtitle
\{\subtitlefont \@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}\par\}
\vspace{1em}
\fi
\by \par
\vspace{1em}
{\authorfont
\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par}

\if@empty\@previousdegrees\else\vfil\fi
\if@empty\@previousdegrees\else\@previousdegrees\fi
\vfil
A THESIS SUBMITTED IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT OF\par
THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE OF\par
\vspace{1em}
{\degreetitlefont \@condupper{@upperdegreetitle}{\@degreetitle}\par}\par
\vspace{1em}
in \par
\vspace{1em}
{\facultyfont \@condupper{@upperfaculty}{\@faculty}\par}\par
\vspace{1em}
{\@program}\par
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\vfill\@copyrighttext\par
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\@submitdate\par
\vspace{1em minus 0.5em}
\@copyrightnotice\else\vfill\@copyrightnotice\fi
\vspace{1em plus 1fil}
\UBCT@signatures\par
\end{center}
```

96
23.3 Authorization Form

This is very university specific. You should add one of your own if you make a class for outside of UBC.

\newcommand{\ubcauthorizationform}{
We clear the page (making sure it opens properly if twoside is selected) and set the pagestyle to empty. Page numbers should not be displayed.
}\pagestyle{empty}\cleardoublepage\@startonecolumn
We use single spacing, restoring the spacing afterwards. Note: in order for \baselineskip to take effect, the font must be reselected. Here this is done with \selectfont.
\edef\@tempbaselineskip{\baselineskip}
\renewcommand{\baselineskip}{1}\selectfont

In presenting this thesis in partial fulfillment of the requirements for an advanced degree at the University of British Columbia, I agree that the Library shall make it freely available for reference and study. I further agree that permission for extensive copying of this thesis for scholarly purposes may be granted by the head of my department or by his or her representatives. It is understood that copying or publication of this thesis for financial gain shall not be allowed without my written permission.

\vfil
$\begin{flushright}$
(Signature) \rule{2in}{0.5pt}$\end{flushright}$
\vfil
\noindent $\@department$

\noindent $\@institution\par$ $\@institutionaddress$

\vspace{2em}
\noindent Date \rule{2in}{0.5pt}$\par$ % The authorization form should not count as a page, but this will % be taken care of in the abstract.
Here we force a new page and reset the columns. Note that the columns must be reset after the newpage has been forced.
\clearpage
@endonecolumn

Here we reset the line spacing: Note: in order for \baselinestretch to take effect, the font must be reselected. Here this is done with an explicit call to \selectfont to force the calculation.
\edef\baselinestretch{\@tempbaselinestretch}
\global\let\thanks\relax
\selectfont
}

Here is a command to use the \ubcauthorization form. Eventually, there may be several different types for different institutions.
\newcommand{\authorizationform}{\ubcauthorizationform}

23.4 Parts, Chapters, Sections, Paragraphs etc.
We modify the behaviour of the standard sectioning commands somewhat in this section to be consistent and a bit more flexible. In particular, all sectioning commands have a starred form and both starred and unstarred forms take and use an optional argument.
The starred form will not generate a number or increment the counter. The optional argument will appear in the table of contents.

23.4.1 Building blocks
The definitions in this part of the class file make use of two internal macros, \@startsection and \seccdef. To understand what is going on here, we describe their syntax.
The macro \@startsection has 6 required arguments, optionally followed by a *, an optional argument and a required argument:
\@startsection(name)(level)(indent)(beforeskip)(afterskip)(style) optional *
[(altheading)](heading)

It is a generic command to start a section, the arguments have the following meaning:
(name) The name of the user level command, e.g., ‘section’.
(level) A number, denoting the depth of the section – e.g., chapter=1, section = 2, etc. A section number will be printed if and only if (level) = the value of the seccnumdepth counter.
(indent) The indentation of the heading from the left margin
\texttt{beforeskip}  The absolute value of this argument gives the skip to leave above
the heading. If it is negative, then the paragraph indent of the text following
the heading is suppressed.

\texttt{afterskip}  If positive, this gives the skip to leave below the heading, else it gives
the skip to leave to the right of a run-in heading.

\texttt{style}  Commands to set the style of the heading.

*  When this is missing the heading is numbered and the corresponding counter is
incremented.

\texttt{altheading}  Gives an alternative heading to use in the table of contents and in
the running heads. This should not be present when the * form is used.

\texttt{heading}  The heading of the new section.

A sectioning command is normally defined to \texttt{\@startsection} and its first six
arguments.

The macro \texttt{\seccdef} can be used when a sectioning command is defined without
using \texttt{\@startsection}. It has two arguments:

\texttt{\seccdef(unstarcmds)(starcmds)}

\texttt{(unstarcmds)}  Used for the normal form of the sectioning command.

\texttt{(starcmds)}  Used for the *-form of the sectioning command.

You can use \texttt{\seccdef} as follows:

\begin{verbatim}
% \newcommand*\chapter\{ ... \seccdef \@chapter \@schapter \} % Command to define
% \newcommand\@chapter\[1]\{ ... \} % \chapter[...]{...}
% \newcommand\@schapter\[2]\[\]{ ... \} % Command to define
% \chapter*\{...\}{...}
\end{verbatim}

23.4.2  Mark commands

In this class, we define starred and unstarred versions of the \texttt{\@...mark} commands
for internal use. The use of the starred versions prevents the user from having to
write code like:

\begin{verbatim}
\chapter\{Preface\markboth{Preface}\}
\end{verbatim}

The default behaviour can be resumed by using the \texttt{nostarmark} option.

Default initializations of \texttt{\@...mark} commands. These commands are used in
the definition of the page styles (see section 22.4.3) Most of them are already
defined by \texttt{latex.dtx}, so they are only shown here.
23.4.3 Define Counters

The value of the counter \textit{secnumdepth} gives the depth of the highest-level sectioning command that is to produce section numbers. The counter \texttt{@oldsecnumdepth} is used internally by the \texttt{\frontmatter} and \texttt{\mainmatter} commands. \texttt{\frontmatter} stores the current value of \texttt{secnumdepth} in \texttt{@oldsecnumdepth} and sets \texttt{secnumdepth} to \texttt{-3}. \texttt{\mainmatter} resets \texttt{secnumdepth}.

This allows \texttt{\frontmatter} to properly suppress chapter numbers etc. This is needed so that packages like \texttt{fancyhdr} work because these define their own markup. The markup does not include numbers if \texttt{secnumdepth} is less than \texttt{-1}.

\begin{verbatim}
1238 \setcounter{secnumdepth}{2}
1239 \newcounter{@oldsecnumdepth}
1240 \setcounter{@oldsecnumdepth}{\value{secnumdepth}}
\end{verbatim}

These counters are used for the section numbers. The macro \begin{verbatim}
\c@part \c@chapter \c@section \c@subsection \c@paragraph \c@subparagraph \end{verbatim}
defines \texttt{(newctr)} to be a counter, which is reset to zero when counter \texttt{(oldctr)} is stepped. Counter \texttt{(oldctr)} must already be defined.

\begin{verbatim}
1241 \newcounter{part}
1242 \newcounter{chapter}
1243 \newcounter{section}[chapter]
1244 \newcounter{subsection}[section]
1245 \newcounter{subsubsection}[subsection]
1246 \newcounter{paragraph}[subsubsection]
1247 \newcounter{subparagraph}[paragraph]
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{\thepart} \texttt{\thechapter} \texttt{\thesection} \texttt{\thesubsection} \texttt{\thesubsubsection} \texttt{\theparagraph} \texttt{\thesubparagraph} For any counter \texttt{CTR}, \texttt{\theCTR} is a macro that defines the printed version of counter \texttt{CTR}. It is defined in terms of the following macros: \begin{verbatim}
\arabic{COUNTER} \roman{COUNTER} \Roman{COUNTER} \alph{COUNTER}
\end{verbatim} \texttt{\arabic{COUNTER}} prints the value of \texttt{COUNTER} as an arabic numeral. \texttt{\roman{COUNTER}} prints the value of \texttt{COUNTER} as a lowercase roman numeral. \texttt{\Roman{COUNTER}} prints the value of \texttt{COUNTER} as an uppercase roman numeral. \texttt{\alph{COUNTER}} prints the value of \texttt{COUNTER} as a lowercase letter: 1 = a, 2 = b, etc.
\textbackslash Alph\{\texttt{COUNTER}\} prints the value of \texttt{COUNTER} as an uppercase letter: 
1 = A, 2 = B, etc.

Actually to save space the internal counter representations and the commands operating on those are used.

```
1248 \renewcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash thepart}\}\{\@Roman\{\texttt{\@part}\}\}
1249 \renewcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash thechapter}\}\{\@arabic\{\texttt{\@chapter}\}\}
1250 \renewcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash thesection}\}\{\texttt{\textbackslash thechapter.\@arabic\{\texttt{\@section}\}\}
1251 \renewcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash thesubsection}\}\{\texttt{\textbackslash thesection.\@arabic\{\texttt{\@subsection\}\}}
1252 \renewcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash theparagraph}\}\{\texttt{\textbackslash thesection.\@arabic\{\texttt{\@subsection.\@arabic\{\texttt{\@paragraph}\}}\}}
1253 \renewcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash thesubparagraph}\}\{\texttt{\textbackslash theparagraph.\@arabic\{\texttt{\@subparagraph}\}}\}
```

### 23.5 Formatting

#### 23.5.1 Fonts and Styles

In order to allow styles to be changed easily, we define some formatting commands that are used throughout to specify how to typeset chapter headings, table of contents entries etc. For example, the \texttt{tocupper} and \texttt{tocitalic} options are implemented through the \texttt{\textbackslash fmttocentry} macro.

```
1255 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocentry}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoupper\{#1\}}}  
1256 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocpart}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{large \texttt{\textbackslash bfseries \#1}\}}} 
1257 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocpartpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}} 
1258 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocchapter}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{\texttt{\textbackslash bfseries \#1}\}}} 
1259 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocchapterpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}} 
1260 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsection}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{#1\}}} 
1261 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsectionpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}} 
1262 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsubsection}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{#1\}}} 
1263 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsubsectionpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}} 
1264 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsubsubsection}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{#1\}}} 
1265 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsubsubsectionpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}} 
1266 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocparagraph}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{#1\}}} 
1267 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocparagraphpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}} 
1268 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsubparagraph}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash toctoitalic\{#1\}}} 
1269 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash fmttocsubparagraphpage}\}[1]{\texttt{\normalfont \normalcolor #1}}
```

#### 23.5.2 Messages

\texttt{\textbackslash chapapp} is initially defined to be \textbackslash \texttt{\textbackslash chaptername}’. The \texttt{\textbackslash appendix} command redefines it to be \textbackslash \texttt{\textbackslash appendixname}.

```
1270 \newcommand\{\texttt{\textbackslash chapapp}\}[1]{\texttt{\textbackslash chaptername}}
```
23.5.3 Front Matter, Main Matter, and Back Matter

A book contains these three (logical) sections. The switch `\@mainmatter` is true iff we are processing Main Matter. When this switch is false, the `\chapter` command does not print chapter numbers.

Here we define the commands that start these sections.

\frontmatter

This command starts Roman page numbering and turns off chapter numbering. This resets the page numbering preserving the even-odd pagination for two-sided printing.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand\frontmatter{% 
  \@mainmatterfalse
  \setcounter{oldsecnumdepth}{\value{secnumdepth}}
  \setcounter{secnumdepth}{-3}
  \pagenumbering{roman}
}\end{verbatim}

\mainmatter

This command clears the page, starts arabic page numbering and turns on chapter numbering. Since this restarts the page numbering from 1, it should also ensure that a recto page is used.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand\mainmatter{% 
  \@mainmattertrue
  \setcounter{secnumdepth}{\value{@oldsecnumdepth}}
  \if@twoside
    \blankdoublepage
  \else
    \cleardoublepage
  \fi
  \pagenumbering{arabic}
}\end{verbatim}

\backmatter

This clears the page, turns off chapter numbering and leaves page numbering unchanged.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand\backmatter{\@mainmatterfalse}
\end{verbatim}

23.5.4 Parts

\part

The command to start a new part of our document.

We start a new (righthand) page and make the pagestyle plain.

\begin{verbatim}
\newcommand\part{% 
  \clearpage
  \thispagestyle{plain}
  \if@twocolumn
    \onecolumn
  \else
    \twocolumn
  \fi
}\end{verbatim}

When we are making a two column document, this will be a one column page. We use `@tempswa` to remember to switch back to two columns.

\begin{verbatim}
\if@twocolumn
  \@tempswathreefalse
\else
  \@tempswathreethreefalse
\fi
\end{verbatim}

102
We need an empty box to prevent the fil glue from disappearing.

Here we use `\secdot` to indicate which commands to use to make the actual heading.

```
\secdot@part\@spart}
```

`\@part` This macro does the actual formatting of the title of a numbered part.

When `secnumdepth` is larger than -2 we have a numbered part, otherwise it is unnumbered.

```
def\@part[#1]#2{\
  \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
  \refstepcounter{part}\
  \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\thepart\hspace{1em}\@fmttocentry{#1}}\
  \else
  \addcontentsline{toc}{part}{\@fmttocentry{#1}}\
  \fi
  \markboth{}{}\
  \centering
  \interlinepenalty @M\normalfont
  \par
  \if@partheads
    \ifnum \c@secnumdepth >-2\relax
      \partnamefont\@toupper{\partname}\nobreakspace\thepart\par
    \fi
  \fi
  \vspace{\partbetweenskip}\
  \@endpart
}
```

We empty the mark registers and center the title on the page if the centering option is true. Also we prevent breaking between lines and reset the font.

```
\@spart#1{\
  \centering
  \interlinepenalty @M\normalfont
  \partnamefont #2\par}\
}
```

`\@spart` This macro does the actual formatting of the title of the part when the star form of the user command was used. In this case we never print a number. Otherwise the formatting is the same.

```
def\@spart#1{\
  \centering
  \interlinepenalty @M\normalfont
  \partnamefont #1\par}\
}
```
This macro finishes the part page, for both \part and \spart.

First we fill the current page.
\def\endpart{\vfil\newpage}

Then, when we are in twosided mode and chapters are supposed to be on right hand sides, we produce a completely blank page.
\if@twoside
\if@openright
\null
\thispagestyle{empty}\
ewpage
\fi
\fi

When this was a two column document we have to switch back to two column mode.
\if@tempswa
\twocolumn\fi}

\section{Chapters}

A chapter should always start on a new page therefore we start by calling \clearpage. The first page of each chapter is set to use the plain pagestyle. This is the default \LaTeX class behaviour and expected by some packages such as fancyhdr\footnote{At a future date, an option may be provided to alter this behaviour.}

We also inform the user that a new chapter is about to be typeset by writing a message to the terminal.

\newcommand\chapter{\clearp@ge\thispagestyle{plain}%

Then we prevent floats from appearing at the top of this page because it looks weird to see a floating object above a chapter title.
\global\@topnum\z@

Then we suppress the indentation of the first paragraph by setting the switch \@afterindent to false. We use \secdef to specify the macros to use for actually setting the chapter title.
\@afterindentfalse
\secdef\@chapter\@schapter}

This macro is called when we have a numbered chapter. When \seccnudepth is larger than \texttt{−1} and when \@mainmatter is true, we display the chapter number. We also inform the user that a new chapter is about to be typeset by writing a message to the terminal.

\footnote{Actually, the package works fine without this behaviour but the documentation tells the user that they must change the plain pagestyle in order to affect these pages. Now following these instructions should work as expected.}
After having written an entry to the table of contents we store the (alternative) title of this chapter with `\chaptermark`. We also add some white space to the lists of figures and tables.

If the `float` package is loaded, then we want to add space to all of the other float kinds defined. In reality, the entire float support should be gutted and the float package required; but that’s outside my current timeframe.

Then we call upon `\@makechapterhead` to format the actual chapter title. We have to do this in a special way when we are in twocolumn mode in order to have the chapter title use the entire `\textwidth`. In one column mode we call `\@afterheading` which takes care of suppressing the indentation.

If `\float@listhead` is defined (i.e. the `float` package is loaded), then we need to renew it to use `\chapter` so that the lists appear in the Table of Contents. Note that if you want initial-capital names, you must use that as the float name ... i.e. `\newfloat{(Program)}...`; this avoids name collision with `\program` also.

This macro is called by the `float` package to create new lists of floats.
The macro above uses \@makechapterhead{text} to format the heading of the chapter.

We begin by leaving some white space. The we open a group in which we have a paragraph indent of 0pt, and in which we have the text set ragged right. We also reset the font.

\def\@makechapterhead#1{\%
Here we would like to move the chapter label up if the label is displayed so that the actual chapter titles all appear on the same level. We test the flag \@chapterheads to see if we should display the chapter heading. This can be toggled with the chapterheads and nochapterheads options.

\setlength{\@tempdima}{\chapterbeforeskip}
\if@chapterheads
\if@mainmatter
\addtolength{\@tempdima}{-\chapterbetweenskip}
Unfortunately, the chapter heading's height will be stretched by \committeespacing (if \@committee), so we need to move up by the chapter heading height (\@tempdimb) times \committeespacing-1. There's a little more, about 3.3 pt.
\settoheight{\@tempdimb}{\chapterfont \@toupper{\@chapapp}\if@headcount\space\thechapter\fi} % b := H
\if@committee %
\addtolength{\@tempdimb}{\committeespacing\@tempdimb} % b := H(C+1)
\setlength{\@tempdimb}{0.5\@tempdimb}
\settodepth{\@tempdimc}{\chapterfont \@toupper{\@chapapp}\if@headcount\space\thechapter\fi} % c := FUDGE FACTOR
\addtolength{\@tempdimc}{-\committeespacing\@tempdimc} % c := F(1-C)
\setlength{\@tempdimc}{-\@tempdimc} % c := F(C-1)
\addtolength{\@tempdimb}{\@tempdimc} % b := H(C+1)/2 + F(C-1)
\fi
\addtolength{\@tempdima}{-\@tempdimb}
\fi
\fi
\vspace*{\@tempdima}\%
At this point, we are either \chapterbeforeskip down the page, or at the point where printing \chapterfont, \chapter and \chapterbetweenskip gets us to \chapterbeforeskip.
\parindent \z@
\@headingalignment \normalfont
\interlinepenalty\@M

Then we check whether the number of the chapter has to be printed. If so we leave some whitespace between the chapter number and its title. The option headcount is used to toggle the display of the number.
We are now \chapterbeforeskip down the page, always.

Now we set the title in \chaptertitlefont. We prevent a page break from occurring in the middle of or after the title. Finally we leave \chapterafterskip whitespace before the text begins. If we are not displaying the chapter headings, then we add the number to the chapter titles.

\@makeschapterhead

\@schapter This macro is called when we have an unnumbered chapter. It is much simpler than \chapter because it only needs to typeset the chapter title.

\@makeschapterhead The macro above uses \@makeschapterhead{text} to format the heading of the chapter. It is similar to \@makechapterhead except that it never has to print a chapter number.
23.5.6 Lower level headings

These commands all make use of \@startsection.

\section This gives a normal heading with white space above and below the heading, the title set in \sectionfont, and no indentation on the first paragraph. Note that we check for optional arguments and perform all uppercase conversion here. This used to cause problems with the hyperref package when we put the uppercase in when writing the table of contents. Now the uppercase is put into the table of contents file.

The starred version of these commands is provided by using the \@ifstar macro to convert the name of the section command to one of \@section or \@ssection. These are the commands that actually do all the work.

Note that the starred form of the \@sectionstart command does not accept the [altheading] optional argument, and does not put this in the table of contents. Thus, we must add the optional argument to the toc manually.

\subsection This gives a normal heading with white space above and below the heading, the title set in \large\bfseries, and no indentation on the first paragraph.
23.6 Lists

23.6.1 General List Parameters

The following commands are used to set the default values for the list environment’s parameters. See the \LaTeX{} manual for an explanation of the meanings of the parameters. Defaults for the list environment are set as follows. First, \texttt{\rightmargin}, \texttt{\listparindent} and \texttt{\itemindent} are set to 0pt. Then, for a Kth level list, the command \texttt{\@listK} is called, where ‘K’ denotes ‘i’, ‘ii’, ‘iii’, ..., ‘vi’.

(I.e., \texttt{\@listiii} is called for a third-level list.) By convention, \texttt{\@listK} should set \texttt{\leftmargin} to \texttt{\leftmarginK}.

\leftmargin When we are in two column mode some of the margins are set somewhat smaller.

\leftmargini \if@twocolumn \setlength{\leftmargini}{2em} \else \setlength{\leftmargini}{2.5em} \fi

\leftmarginii Until the whole of the parameter setting in these files is rationalized, we need to set the value of \texttt{\leftmargin} at this outer level.

\leftmargin The following three are calculated so that they are larger than the sum of \texttt{\labelsep} and the width of the default labels (which are ‘(m)’, ‘vii.’ and ‘M.’).
\labelsep \labelsep is the distance between the label and the text of an item; \labelwidth is the width of the label.

These penalties are inserted before and after a list or paragraph environment. They are set to a bonus value to encourage page breaking at these points.

This penalty is inserted between list items.

The enumerate environment uses four counters: \texttt{enumi}, \texttt{enumii}, \texttt{enumiii} and \texttt{enumiv}, where \texttt{enumN} controls the numbering of the \texttt{N}th level enumeration.

The counters are already defined in \texttt{latex.dtx}, but their representation is changed here.

The label for each item is generated by the commands

The expansion of \texttt{\p@enum\texttt{N}\theenum\texttt{N}} defines the output of a \texttt{\ref} command when referencing an item of the \texttt{N}th level of an enumerated list.
23.6.3 Itemize

Itemization is controlled by four commands: \textbullet, \textendash, \textasteriskcentered, and \textperiodcentered, which define the labels of the various itemization levels: the symbols used are bullet, bold endash, centered asterisk and centred dot.

\newcommand\labelitemi{\textbullet}
\newcommand\labelitemii{\normalfont\bfseries \textendash}
\newcommand\labelitemiii{\textasteriskcentered}
\newcommand\labelitemiv{\textperiodcentered}

23.6.4 Description

The description environment is defined here – while the itemize and enumerate environments are defined in latex.dtx.

\newenvironment{description}{\list{}{\labelwidth\z@ \itemindent\leftmargin}
\let\makelabel\descriptionlabel}{\endlist}
\descriptionlabel To change the formatting of the label, you must redefine \descriptionlabel.

\newcommand\descriptionlabel[1]{\hspace{\labelsep}\normalfont\bfseries #1}

23.7 Defining new environments

23.7.1 Abstract

With \texttt{onecolumn} the abstract is treated as a chapter. With the \texttt{twocolumn} option, the abstract is still displayed in one column but we must format it and make sure it appears in the table of contents.

\newenvironment{abstract}{% Here we set the page to one column and reset the margins if needed.
\@startonecolumn\@startabstracthook
Now we format the abstract as a chapter.
\chapter{\abstractname}
}{% Here is the end of the environment. We clear the page and reset the column spacing.
\clearpage\@endonecolumn}
23.7.2 Verse

The verse environment is defined by making clever use of the list environment’s parameters. The user types \ to end a line. This is implemented by \let’ing \ equal \@centercr.

\newenvironment{verse}
{
\let\\@centercr
\list{}{\itemsep \z@
\itemindent -1.5em
\listparindent\itemindent
\rightmargin \leftmargin
\advance\leftmargin 1.5em}
\item\relax}
{\endlist}

23.7.3 Quotation

The quotation environment is also defined by making clever use of the list environment’s parameters. The lines in the environment are set smaller than \textwidth. The first line of a paragraph inside this environment is indented.

\newenvironment{quotation}
{
\list{}{\listparindent 1.5em
\itemindent \listparindent
\rightmargin \leftmargin
\parsep \z@ \@plus\p@}
\item\relax}
{\endlist}

23.7.4 Quote

The quote environment is like the quotation environment except that paragraphs are not indented.

\newenvironment{quote}
{
\list{}{\rightmargin\leftmargin}
\item\relax}
{\endlist}

23.7.5 Theorem

This document class does not define it’s own theorem environments, the defaults, supplied by latex.dtx are available.

23.7.6 Appendix

The \appendix command is not really an environment, it is a macro that makes some changes in the way things are done.

In the report and book document classes the \appendix command must do the following:
• reset the chapter and section counters to zero,

• set \@chapapp to \appendixname (for messages),

• redefine the chapter counter to produce appendix numbers,

• possibly redefine the \chapter command if appendix titles and headings are to look different from chapter titles and headings. This redefinition is done globally to ensure that it survives even if \appendix is issued within an environment such as \multicols.

• possibly add a division line with \appendicesname to the table of contents

\newcommand{\appendix}{\par
\setcounter{chapter}{0}\
\setcounter{section}{0}\
\if@appendixpart{\part{\appendicesname}}\
\else{\if@appendicestoc{\addtocontents{toc}{\protect\contentsline{part}{\@fmttocentry{\appendicesname}}{}}}}\fi
\fi
\if@appendixpage{\pagestyle{empty}\cleardoublepage}\fi
}
\gdef\@chapapp{\appendixname}\
\gdef\thechapter{\@Alph\c@chapter}

23.8 Setting parameters for existing environments

23.8.1 Array and tabular

\arraycolsep The columns in an array environment are separated by 2\arraycolsep.
\setlength{\arraycolsep}{5\p@}

\tabcolsep The columns in an tabular environment are separated by 2\tabcolsep.
\setlength{\tabcolsep}{6\p@}

\arrayrulewidth The width of rules in the array and tabular environments is given by \arrayrulewidth.
\setlength{\arrayrulewidth}{.4\p@}

\doublerulesep The space between adjacent rules in the array and tabular environments is given by \doublerulesep.
\setlength{\doublerulesep}{2\p@}
23.8.2 Tabbing
\tabbingsep This controls the space that the \ command puts in. (See LATEX manual for an explanation.)
\setlength{\tabbingsep}{\labelsep}

23.8.3 Minipage
\@minipagerestore The macro \@minipagerestore is called upon entry to a minipage environment to set up things that are to be handled differently inside a minipage environment. In the current styles, it does nothing.
\@mpfootins Minipages have their own footnotes; \skip@mpfootins plays same rôle for footnotes in a minipage as \skip\footins does for ordinary footnotes.
\skip@mpfootins = \skip\footins

23.8.4 Framed boxes
\fboxsep The space left by \fbox and \framebox between the box and the text in it.
\fboxrule The width of the rules in the box made by \fbox and \framebox.
\setlength{\fboxsep}{3\p@}
\setlength{\fboxrule}{.4\p@}

23.8.5 Equation and eqnarray
\theequation When within chapters, the equation counter will be reset at the beginning of a new chapter and the equation number will be prefixed by the chapter number. This code must follow the \chapter definition or, more exactly, the definition of the chapter counter.
\@addtoreset{equation}{chapter}
\renewcommand{\theequation}{\ifnum \c@chapter>\z@ \thechapter.\fi \@arabic\c@equation}
\jot \jot is the extra space added between lines of an eqnarray environment. The default value is used.
\setlength{\jot}{3pt}
\@eqnnum The macro \@eqnnum defines how equation numbers are to appear in equations. Again the default is used.
\def{\@eqnnum}{\theequation}
23.9 Floating objects

The file `latex.dtx` only defines a number of tools with which floating objects can be defined. This is done in the document class. It needs to define the following macros for each floating object of type `TYPE` (e.g., `TYPE = figure`).

\fps@TYPE The default placement specifier for floats of type `TYPE`.

\ftype@TYPE The type number for floats of type `TYPE`. Each `TYPE` has associated a unique positive `TYPE` number, which is a power of two. E.g., figures might have type number 1, tables type number 2, programs type number 4, etc.

\ext@TYPE The file extension indicating the file on which the contents list for float type `TYPE` is stored. For example, `\ext@figure` = `lof`.

\fnum@TYPE A macro to generate the figure number for a caption. For example, `\fnum@TYPE` == `Figure \thefigure`.

\@makecaption ⟨num⟩ ⟨text⟩ A macro to make a caption, with ⟨num⟩ the value produced by `\fnum@...` and ⟨text⟩ the text of the caption. It can assume it’s in a `\parbox` of the appropriate width. This will be used for all floating objects.

The actual environment that implements a floating object such as a figure is defined using the macros `\@float` and `\end@float`, which are defined in `latex.dtx`.

An environment that implements a single column floating object is started with `\@float{TYPE}[(⟨placement⟩)]` of type `TYPE` with ⟨placement⟩ as the placement specifier. The default value of ⟨PLACEMENT⟩ is defined by `\fps@TYPE`.

The environment is ended by `\end@float`. E.g., `\figure` == `\@floatfigure`, `\endfigure` == `\end@float`.

23.9.1 Figure

Here is the implementation of the figure environment.

\c@figure First we have to allocate a counter to number the figures.

In the report and book document classes figures within chapters are numbered per chapter.

\newcounter{figure}[chapter]
\renewcommand \thefigure\{\ifnum \c@chapter\>\z@ \thechapter.\fi \@arabic\c@figure\}

\fps@figure Here are the parameters for the floating objects of type ‘figure’.

\ftype@figure \def\fps@figure{tbp}
\ext@figure \def\ftype@figure{1}
\num@figure \def\ext@figure{lof}
\fnum@figure \def\fnum@figure{\figurefont\figurename\nobreakspace\thefigure}
23.9.2 Table
Here is the implementation of the table environment. It is very much the same as the figure environment.

\c@table First we have to allocate a counter to number the tables.
In the report and book document classes tables within chapters are numbered per chapter.
\newcounter{table}[chapter]
\renewcommand\thetable\
{\ifnum\c@chapter>\z@\thechapter.\fi\@arabic\c@table}
\fps@table
\ftype@table
\ext@table
\num@table
\def\fps@table{tbp}
\def\ftype@table{2}
\def\ext@table{lot}
\def\fnum@table{{\tablefont\tablename\nobreakspace\thetable}}
\table And the definition of the actual environment. The form with the * is used for double column tables.
\newenvironment{table}
{\@float{table}}
{\end@float}
\newenvironment{table*}
{\@dblfloat{table}}
{\end@dblfloat}

23.9.3 Captions
The \caption command calls \maketitle to format the caption of floating objects. It gets two arguments, \textit{(number)}, the number of the floating object and \textit{(text)}, the text of the caption. Usually \textit{(number)} contains a string such as 'Figure 3.2'. The macro can assume it is called inside a \parbox of right width, with \normalsize.
\abovecaptionskip These lengths contain the amount of white space to leave above and below the caption.
\belowcaptionskip
\newlength{abovecaptionskip}
\newlength{belowcaptionskip}
The definition of this macro is \long in order to allow more than one paragraph in a caption.

\long\def\@makecaption#1#2{%
\vskip\abovecaptionskip
We want to see if the caption fits on one line on the page, therefore we first typeset it in a temporary box.
\sbox\@tempboxa{{\captionheaderfont #1:} {\captionbodyfont #2}}%
We can measure its width. If it is larger than the current \hsize we typeset the caption as an ordinary paragraph. In this case, we check the option hangingcaptions to see if we should hang the caption after the label or not.
\ifdim \wd\@tempboxa >\hsize\if@hangingcaptions
\@hangfrom{\captionheaderfont #1: }{\captionbodyfont #2\par}%
\else
{\captionheaderfont #1: }{\captionbodyfont #2\par}%
\fi\else
\global \@minipagefalse
\hb@xt\hsize{\hfil\box\@tempboxa\hfil}%
\fi\vskip\belowcaptionskip}

23.10 Font changing

Here we supply the declarative font changing commands that were common in \LaTeX version 2.09 and earlier. These commands work in text mode and in math mode. They are provided for compatibility, but one should start using the \text... and \math... commands instead. These commands are defined using \DeclareTextFontCommand, a command with three arguments: the user command to be defined; \LaTeX commands to execute in text mode and \LaTeX commands to execute in math mode.

\rm The commands to change the family. When in compatibility mode we select the \tt ‘default’ font first, to get \LaTeX 2.09 behaviour.
\sf \ DeclareOldFontCommand{\rm}{\normalfont\rmfamily}{\mathrm}
\DeclareOldFontCommand{\sf}{\normalfont\sffamily}{\mathsf}
\DeclareOldFontCommand{\tt}{\normalfont\ttfamily}{\mathtt}

\bf The command to change to the bold series. One should use \mdseries to explicitly switch back to medium series.
\DeclareOldFontCommand{\bf}{\normalfont\bfseries}{\mathbf}
And the commands to change the shape of the font. The slanted and small caps shapes are not available by default as math alphabets, so those changes do nothing in math mode. However, we do warn the user that the selection will not have any effect. One should use `\upshape` to explicitly change back to the upright shape.

1671 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\it}{\normalfont\itshape}{\mathit}
1672 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\sl}{\normalfont\slshape}{\@nomath\sl}
1673 \DeclareOldFontCommand{\sc}{\normalfont\scshape}{\@nomath\sc}

\cal\mit The commands `\cal` and `\mit` should only be used in math mode, outside math mode they have no effect. Currently the New Font Selection Scheme defines these commands to generate warning messages. Therefore we have to define them ‘by hand’.

1674 \DeclareRobustCommand*{\cal}{\@fontswitch\relax\mathcal}
1675 \DeclareRobustCommand*{\mit}{\@fontswitch\relax\mathnormal}

24 Cross Referencing

24.1 Table of Contents, etc.

In order to add text to the table of contents, the command `\addcontentsline` should be used. This is a standard \LaTeX\ command and is redefined by the `hyperref` package to implement cross-links. A non-standard feature of the thesis class is that it should allow consistent reformatting of the table of contents entries. To this end, one should format the entries with the appropriate call to a formatting function such as `\formatfortoc` which implements the options like `tocupper` and `tocitalic`.

It might be tempting to modify the `\addtocontents` function, but this is already modified by `hyperref` and possibly other packages, so to maintain compatibility we must do this.

A `\section` command writes a `\contentsline{section}{⟨title⟩}{⟨page⟩}` command on the `.toc` file, where `⟨title⟩` contains the contents of the entry and `⟨page⟩` is the page number. If sections are being numbered, then `⟨title⟩` will be of the form `\numberline{⟨num⟩}{⟨heading⟩}` where `⟨num⟩` is the number produced by `\thesection`. Other sectioning commands work similarly.

A `\caption` command in a ‘figure’ environment writes `\contentsline{figure}{⟨numberline(⟨num⟩){⟨caption⟩}{⟨page⟩}} on the `.lof` file, where `⟨num⟩` is the number produced by `\thefigure` and `⟨caption⟩` is the figure caption. It works similarly for a ‘table’ environment.

The command `\contentsline⟨name⟩` expands to `\l@⟨name⟩`. So, to specify the table of contents, we must define `\l@chapter`, `\l@section`, `\l@subsection`, ... ; to specify the list of figures, we must define `\l@figure`; and so on. Most of these can be defined with the `\dottedtocline` command, which works as follows.

\dottedtocline{⟨level⟩}{⟨indent⟩}{⟨numwidth⟩}{⟨title⟩}{⟨page⟩}

`⟨level⟩` An entry is produced only if `⟨level⟩` <= value of the `tocdepth` counter.

Note, `\chapter` is level 0, `\section` is level 1, etc.
(indent) The indentation from the outer left margin of the start of the contents line.

(numwidth) The width of a box in which the section number is to go, if (title) includes a \numberline command.

\@pnumwidth \@tocrmarg \@dotsep

This command uses the following three parameters, which are set with a \newcommand (so em’s can be used to make them depend upon the font).
\@pnumwidth The width of a box in which the page number is put.
\@tocrmarg The right margin for multiple line entries. One wants \@tocrmarg \geq \@pnumwidth
\@dotsep Separation between dots, in mu units. Should be defined as a number like 2 or 1.7

\newcommand\@pnumwidth{1.55em}
\newcommand\@tocrmarg{2.55em}
\newcommand\@dotsep{4.5}
\setcounter{tocdepth}{2}

24.1.1 Table of Contents

\tableofcontents

This macro is used to request that \LaTeX produces a table of contents. In the report and book document classes the tables of contents, figures etc. are always set in single-column style.

\newcommand{\tableofcontents}{%\if@twocolumn
\@restonecoltrue\onecolumn\else\@restonecolfalse\fi}
\@starttoc{toc}%
\if@restonecol\twocolumn\fi}

The title is set using the \chapter command, making sure that the running head —if one is required— contains the right information. Note that this includes the table of contents in the table of contents.

\chapter{\contentsname}

The the actual table of contents is made by calling \@starttoc{toc}. After that we restore twocolumn mode if necessary.

\@starttoc{toc}%
\ifrestonecol\twocolumn\fi}

Each sectioning command needs an additional macro to format its entry in the table of contents, as described above. The macro for the entry for parts is defined in a special way.

First we make sure that if a page break should occur, it occurs before this entry. Also a little whitespace is added and a group begun to keep changes local.
The macro \numberline requires that the width of the box that holds the part number is stored in L\TeX’s scratch register \@tempdima. Therefore we initialize it there even though we do not use \numberline internally—the value used is quite large so that something like \numberline{VIII} would still work.

\setlength{\@tempdima}{3em}
\begingroup
We set \parindent to 0pt and use \rightskip to leave enough room for the page numbers\footnote{We should really set \rightskip to \@tocrmarg instead of \@pnumwidth (no version of L\TeX ever did this), otherwise the \rightskip is too small. Unfortunately this can’t be changed in L\TeX\version{2.12} as we don’t want to create different versions of L\TeX\version{2.12} which produce different typeset output unless this is absolutely necessary; instead we suspend it for L\TeX\version{3}.} To prevent overfull box messages the \parfillskip is set to a negative value.
\parindent \z@ \rightskip \@pnumwidth
\parfillskip -\@pnumwidth
Now we can set the entry, in a large bold font. We make sure to leave vertical mode, set the part title and add the pagernumber, set flush right.
\leavevmode
\@fmttocpart{#1}
Dotted leaders can be controlled by setting the boolean \if@parttocdotstrue.
\if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax\else%
Check that there is a page number
\if@parttocdots
\leaders\hbox{$\m@th%\mkern \@dotsep mu$}\hbox{.}\mkern \@dotsep%\mu$}
\fi
\fi
\hfil\hbox@xt@\@pnumwidth{}
\hss \@fmttocpartpage{#2}}\par
Prevent a page break immediately after this entry, but use \everypar to reset the \if@nobreak switch. Finally we close the group.
\nobreak
\global\@nobreaktrue
\everypar{\global\@nobreakfalse\everypar{}%}
\endgroup

\@chapter This macro formats the entries in the table of contents for chapters. It is very similar to \@part

First we make sure that if a page break should occur, it occurs before this entry. Also a little whitespace is added and a group begun to keep changes local.
The macro \numberline requires that the width of the box that holds the part number is stored in \LaTeX's scratch register \@tempdima. Therefore we initialize it there even though we do not use \numberline internally (the position as well as the values seems questionable but can’t be changed without producing compatibility problems). We begin a group, and change some of the paragraph parameters (see also the remark at \l@part regarding \rightskip).

\setlength\@tempdima{1.5em}\
\begingroup\
\parindent \z@ \rightskip \@pnumwidth\
\parfillskip -\@pnumwidth\

Then we leave vertical mode.

\leavevmode

Because we do not use \numberline here, we have do some fine tuning 'by hand', before we can set the entry. We discourage but not disallow a page break immediately after a chapter entry.

\advance\leftskip\@tempdima\
\hskip -\leftskip\

Dotted leaders can be controlled by setting the boolean \if@chaptertocdotstrue.

\if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax\else% Check that there is a page number
\if@chaptertocdots\leaders\hbox{$\m@th%\hspace{\@dotsep}\cdot}%\fi\fi
\hfil\hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hss\@fmttocchapterpage{#2}}\par
\penalty\@highpenalty\endgroup

\l@section The definition for \l@section is much simpler.

\newcommand\l@section[2]{%\ifnum \c@tocdepth >\m@ne\addpenalty{-\@highpenalty}\
\vskip 1.0em \plus\p@\

\setlength\@tempdima{1.5em}\
\begingroup\
\parindent \z@ \rightskip \@pnumwidth\
\parfillskip -\@pnumwidth\

Then we leave vertical mode.

\leavevmode

Because we do not use \numberline here, we have do some fine tuning ‘by hand’, before we can set the entry. We discourage but not disallow a page break immediately after a chapter entry.

\advance\leftskip\@tempdima\
\hskip -\leftskip\

Dotted leaders can be controlled by setting the boolean \if@chaptertocdotstrue.

\if\relax\detokenize{#2}\relax\else% Check that there is a page number
\if@chaptertocdots\leaders\hbox{$\m@th%\hspace{\@dotsep}\cdot}%\fi\fi
\hfil\hb@xt@\@pnumwidth{\hss\@fmttocchapterpage{#2}}\par
\penalty\@highpenalty\endgroup

All lower level entries are defined using the macro \dottedtocline (see above).

\listoffigures
This macro is used to request that \LaTeX produces a list of figures. It is very similar to \tableofcontents.

\listoftables
This macro is used to request that \LaTeX produces a list of tables. It is very similar to \tableofcontents.
\l@table This macro produces an entry in the list of tables.

\let\l@table\l@figure
newcommand*{\l@table}{\@dottedtocline{1}{\lotindent}{\lotlabelwidth}}

24.2 Bibliography

\bibindent The “open” bibliography format uses an indentation of \bibindent.
\newdimen\bibindent
\setlength{\bibindent}{1.5em}
thebibliography

The `thebibliography` environment executes the following commands:
\renewcommand{\newblock}{\hskip.11em @plus.33em @minus.07em}
— Defines the “closed” format, where the blocks (major units of information) of an entry run together.
\sloppy — Used because it’s rather hard to do line breaks in bibliographies,
\sfcode\.'=1000\relax — Causes a `.` (period) not to produce an end-of-sentence space.

The implementation of this environment is based on the generic list environment. It uses the \enumerate counter internally to generate the labels of the list.

When an empty ‘thebibliography’ environment is found, a warning is issued.

One modification is that, even if the bibliography is not numbered, it is still entered into the table of contents and into the headers.

1778 \providecommand{\bibsection}{}
1779 \newenvironment{thebibliography}{1}{
1780 \bibsection
1781 \list{\@biblabel{\@arabic\c@enumiv}}%
1782 {\setwidth{\labelwidth}{\@biblabel{#1}}%}
1783 \leftmargin\labelwidth
1784 \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
1785 \@openbib@code
1786 \advance\leftmargin\labelsep
1787 \@openbib@code
1788 \usecounter{enumiv}%
1789 \let\p@enumiv\@empty
1790 \renewcommand{\theenumiv}{\@arabic\c@enumiv}%
1791 \sloppy

This is setting the normal (non-infinite) value of \clubpenalty for the whole of this environment, so we must reset its stored value also. (Why is there a \% after the second 4000 below?)
1792 \clubpenalty4000
1793 \@clubpenalty \clubpenalty
1794 \widowpenalty4000%
1795 \sfcode'.'=1000\relax
1796 \def{\@noitemerr
1797 \latex@warning{\%Empty `thebibliography' environment}%%
1798 \endlist}
Now we define the \bibsection hook which formats the section/chapter header. This should be done at the beginning of the document so it overrides the natbib default.

\AtBeginDocument{
\renewcommand\bibsection{
\if@sectionbib
\if@bibnum
\section{\bibname}\
\else
\section*{\bibname}\
\sectionstarmark{\bibname}\
\addcontentsline{toc}{section}{\@fmttocentry{\bibname}}\
\fi\
\else
\if@bibnum
\chapter{\bibname}\
\else
\chapter*{\bibname}\
\chapterstarmark{\bibname}\
\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\@fmttocentry{\bibname}}\
\fi\
\fi
}
}% AtBeginDocument

\newblock The default definition for \newblock is to produce a small space.
\newcommand\newblock{\hskip .11em\@plus.33em\@minus.07em}

\@openbib@code The default definition for \@openbib@code is to do nothing. It will be changed by the openbib option.
\let\@openbib@code\@empty

\@biblabel The label for a \bibitem[...] command is produced by this macro. The default from latex.dtx is used.
% \renewcommand*{\@biblabel}[1]{[#1]\hfil}

\@cite The output of the \cite command is produced by this macro. The default from latex.dtx is used.
% \renewcommand*{\@cite}[1]{[#1]}

24.3 The index

\theindex The environment ‘theindex’ can be used for indices. It makes an index with two columns, with each entry a separate paragraph. At the user level the commands \item, \subitem and \subsubitem are used to produce index entries of various levels. When a new letter of the alphabet is encountered an amount of \indexspace white space can be added.
\newenvironment{theindex}{\if@twocolumn \@restonecolfalse
\else \@restonecoltrue \fi
\columnseprule \z@
\columnsep 35\p@}{% 
% \end{macrocode}
% \changes{v1.57}{2009/1/30}{Use custom \cs{clearp@ge} command to
% optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page.}
% \changes{v1.32}{2006/02/15}{Ensure that two-sided printing starts the
% index properly (CD)}
% \begin{macrocode}
clearp@ge
% \end{macrocode}

Now carry on with inserting the necessary space and the heading and heads.
\settoheight{\@tempdimb}{\chapterfont \@toupper{\indexname}} % b = H
\if@committee %
\setlength{\@tempdimc}{\@tempdimb} % c := H
\addtolength{\@tempdimc}{\committeespacing\@tempdimc} % c := H(C+1)
\setlength{\@tempdimc}{0.5\@tempdimc} % c := H(C+1)/2
\addtolength{\@tempdimb}{-\committeespacing\@tempdimb} % b := H(1-C)
\setlength{\@tempdimb}{-\@tempdimb} % b := H(C-1)
\addtolength{\@tempdimb}{\@tempdimc} % b := H(C+1)/2 + H(C-1)
\fi
\addtolength{\@tempdimb}{0.5\@tempdimb}
\phantomsection
\twocolumn[\vspace*{\@tempdimb}]
\@makeschapterhead{\@toupper{\indexname}}
\@mkboth{\@toupper{\indexname}}{\@toupper{\indexname}}
\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\@fmttocentry{\indexname}}% 
% \end{macrocode}
% \changes{v1.32}{2006/02/15}{Note: the hyperref link will be to the
% incorrect page! (CD)}
% \begin{macrocode}
\thispagestyle{plain}\parindent\z@  
\parskip\z@ \@plus .3\p@\relax
\let\item@idxitem
% \end{macrocode}

When the document continues after the index and it was a one column document we have to switch back to one column after the index.
\if@restonecol\onecolumn\else\clearpage\fi

These macros are used to format the entries in the index.
\newcommand\@idxitem{\par\hangindent 40\p@}
\newcommand\subitem{\@idxitem\hspace{20\p@}}
\newcommand\subsubitem{\@idxitem\hspace{30\p@}}
\indexspace The amount of white space that is inserted between ‘letter blocks’ in the index.

\renewcommand\indexspace{\par \vskip 10pt \@plus 5pt \@minus 3pt \relax}

24.4 Footnotes

\footnoterule Usually, footnotes are separated from the main body of the text by a small rule. This rule is drawn by the macro \footnoterule. We have to make sure that the rule takes no vertical space (see plain.tex) so we compensate for the natural height of the rule of 0.4pt by adding the right amount of vertical skip.

To prevent the rule from colliding with the footnote we first add a little negative vertical skip, then we put the rule and make sure we end up at the same point where we begun this operation.

\renewcommand\footnoterule{%
 \kern-3pt
 \hrule\@width.4\columnwidth
 \kern2.6pt}

\c@footnote Footnotes are numbered within chapters unless the nochapternotereset option is selected.

\if@chapternotereset%
 \@addtoreset{footnote}{chapter}%
\fi%

\@makefntext The footnote mechanism of \TeX{} calls the macro \@makefntext to produce the actual footnote. The macro gets the text of the footnote as its argument and should use \@thefnmark as the mark of the footnote. The macro \@makefntext is called when effectively inside a \parbox of width \columnwidth (i.e., with \hsize = \columnwidth).

An example of what can be achieved is given by the following piece of \TeX{} code.

\% \newcommand\@makefntext[1]{%
 \@setpar\@@par
 \@tempdima = \hsize
 \@advance\@tempdima-10pt
 \parshape \@one 10pt \@tempdima%
 \par
 \parindent 1em\noindent
 \hbox to \z@{$\text@{\hss}\@makefnmark$\#1}}
\%

The effect of this definition is that all lines of the footnote are indented by 10pt, while the first line of a new paragraph is indented by 1em. To change these dimensions, just substitute the desired value for ‘10pt’ (in both places) or ‘1em’. The mark is flushright against the footnote.

In these document classes we use a simpler macro, in which the footnote text is set like an ordinary text paragraph, with no indentation except on the first line.
of a paragraph, and the first line of the footnote. Thus, all the macro must do is set `\parindent` to the appropriate value for succeeding paragraphs and put the proper indentation before the mark.

```
\newcommand\@makefntext[1]{%
  \parindent 1em%
  \noindent
  \hb@xt@1.8em{\hss\@makefnmark}#1}
```

The footnote markers that are printed in the text to point to the footnotes should be produced by the macro `\@makefntmark`. We use the default definition for it.

```
\renewcommand\@makefntmark{\hbox{\@textsuperscript{1}\normalsize\@thefnmark}}
```

## 25 Initialization

### 25.1 Words

This document class is for documents prepared in the English language. To prepare a version for another language, various English words must be replaced. All the English words that require replacement are defined below in command names. These commands may be redefined in any class or package that is customising \LaTeX{} for use with non-English languages. These are not meant to be used by the user unless they really need access to change these, thus I have kept them in the same syntax as for the `book` class.

One thing to be aware of is that the `babel` package will redefine these at `\begin{document}` so if the package is loaded, we must add the redefinitions to `\captionsenglish`.

```
\newcommand*{\contentsname}{Table of Contents}
\newcommand*{\listfigurename}{List of Figures}
\newcommand*{\listtablename}{List of Tables}
\AtBeginDocument{
  \@ifpackageloaded{babel}{
    \renewcommand*{\contentsname}{Table of Contents}
    \renewcommand*{\listfigurename}{List of Figures}
    \renewcommand*{\listtablename}{List of Tables}
  }{}
}
```

```
\newcommand*{\bibname}{Bibliography}
\newcommand*{\indexname}{Index}
```
25.2 Date
\today This macro uses the TeX primitives \month, \day and \year to provide the date of the BReTeX-run.
At \begin{document} this definition will be optimized so that the names of all the ‘wrong’ months are not stored. This optimisation is not done here as that would ‘freeze’ \today in any special purpose format made by loading the class file into the format file.
\def\today{\ifcase\month\or January\or February\or March\or April\or May\or June\or July\or August\or September\or October\or November\or December\fi \space\number\day, \number\year}

25.3 Two column mode
\columnsep This gives the distance between two columns in two column mode.
\setlength\columnsep{10\p@}
\columnseprule This gives the width of the rule between two columns in two column mode. We have no visible rule.
\setlength\columnseprule{0\p@}

25.4 The page style
We use the page style headings by default. We use Arabic page numbers.
\if@final
\if@runningheaders
\pagestyle{headings}
\else
\pagestyle{plain}
\fi
\else % draft

25.5 Single or double sided printing

When the `twoside` option wasn’t specified, we don’t try to make each page as long as all the others.

When the `twocolumn` option was specified we call \texttt{twocolumn} to activate this mode. We try to make each column as long as the others, but call \texttt{sloppy} to make our life easier.

Normally we call \texttt{onecolumn} to initiate typesetting in one column.

25.6 Single or double spacing

\texttt{committeespacing} The spacing of the document is single spaced by default unless the committee option is selected. In this case it is set by \texttt{committeespacing} which is by default 1.5 spaced so that the thesis committee has room for comments.

Finally, we close off the file so that nothing else is put into the thesis class.

\texttt{(genthesis)}
Part V

Flavours

26 UBC: ubcthesis.cls

This section defines the ubcthesis.cls file.

1 ⟨∗ubcthesis⟩

26.1 Identification

This section identifies the version of the file. It also indicates which version of \LaTeX (\LaTeX \texttt{2ε}) is required and makes sure that an appropriate message is displayed when another \TeX format is used.

2 \NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1995/12/01]

Now we announce the file or class name and its version:

3 \ProvidesClass{ubcthesis}[2015/05/31 v1.72 ^^J
4 University of British Columbia Thesis Class]

26.2 Options

Here are the options modified by the ubcthesis.cls class. See Section 3.3 for all of the options provided by genthesis.cls: These are also available for use with ubcthesis.cls in addition to those listed here (some defaults are changed here as well.)

10pt/11pt/12pt For ubcthesis.cls, 11pt is default.

pagemumTR/pagemumBC/pagemumBR For ubcthesis.cls, default page numbering is bottom right corner.

chapternotereset/nochapternotereset For ubcthesis.cls, nochapternotereset is default.

bibnum/nobibnum For ubcthesis.cls, nobibnum is default.

The default options are set by passing them to genthesis.cls. The genthesis class calls \ProcessOptions* which preserves the order, so user specified options will override these.

5 \PassOptionsToClass{11pt}{genthesis}%
6 \PassOptionsToClass{pagemumBR}{genthesis}%
7 \PassOptionsToClass{nochapternotereset}{genthesis}%
8 \PassOptionsToClass{nobibnum}{genthesis}%
9 \PassOptionsToClass{appendicestoc}{genthesis}%
10 \PassOptionsToClass{appendixpage}{genthesis}%
Here is the code that passes any undeclared options to the `genthesis.cls`.

```latex
\DeclareOption*{%
  \PassOptionsToClass{\CurrentOption}{genthesis}%
}\}

Here we process the options.
\ProcessOptions*\relax
```

### 26.3 Loading classes and packages

Here we load the main thesis class:

```
\LoadClass{genthesis}
```

### 26.4 Title Page

The UBC thesis class uses a modification of the standard titlepage.

```
\copyrightnotice{}
\renewcommand{\titlefont}{\huge \bfseries}
\renewcommand{\subtitlefont}{\Large \bfseries}
```

The following code allows one to include a logo on the titlepage. This code is thanks to Darren.

```
\newlength{\@logocopywidth}
\newlength{\@logocopyheight}
\newlength{\@logowidth}
```

Here we include the logo in a box, or nothing if the logo option is not used and record its width. Note that we include the logo copy twice, once without any formatting to determine the width and height, and again spaced to this width. This is a bit redundant right now, but works. In future this should be cleaned up so that there is no duplication.

```
\newcommand{\@logo}{\hbox{
  \iflogo
    \includegraphics*[height=\@logocopyheight]{\@logofile}
  \fi}}
```

```
\newcommand{\@logocopybare}{\vbox{\
  \@condupper{@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\par
  (\@institutionaddress)\par
  \@submitdate\par
  \@copyrighttext}}
```

```
\newcommand{\@logocopy}{\vbox{\
  \hbox to\@logocopywidth{\
    \hfil\@condupper{@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\hfil}\
  \vspace{1.5ex}\
  \hbox to\@logocopywidth{\hfil(\@institutionaddress)\hfil}\
  \vspace{1.5ex}\
  \hbox to\@logocopywidth{\hfil\@submitdate\hfil}\
  \vspace{1.5ex}\
  \hbox to\@logocopywidth{\
    \hfil@condupper{@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\hfil}}
```

132
\hfil\copyrighttext\hfil}}

We center the entire title vertically. \texttt{\vfil} is a vertical space (or glue) of infinite stretchability: It will expand and push the page down. An accompanying \texttt{\vfil} at the bottom will push up and the page will be centered. Note that \texttt{\vfill} works the same way, but that \texttt{\vfill} is “more infinite” than \texttt{\vfil} so a \texttt{\vfill} will always collapse a \texttt{\vfil}. The \texttt{\null} must be used because, at the top of a new page, rubber space is normally eaten.

\renewcommand{\titlepage}{
  \null\vfil
}

Then we set the title in the \texttt{\titlefont}; leave a little space, the, if a subtitle has been defined, we put is in \texttt{\subtitlefont}, then after a little space we put “by”, then leave some space and and set the author(s) in \texttt{\authorfont}. We do this inside a tabular environment to get them in a single column. Then we list the previous degrees. We do this in a tabular environment so that the extra newline does not give a problem. Before the date we leave a little whitespace again.

The titlepage is always centered, regardless of the \texttt{center} option.

\begin{center}%
  \titlefont \@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}\par%
  \vspace{1em}%
  \if@subtitle
    \subtitlefont \@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}\par%
    \vspace{1em}%
  \fi
  \authorfont%
    \@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%
  \if@empty\@previousdegrees\else\vfil\fi%
  \if@empty\@previousdegrees\else\@previousdegrees\fi%
  \vfil
  A \textsc{thesis} \textsc{submitted} \textsc{in} \textsc{partial} \textsc{fulfillment} \textsc{of}\par
  \textsc{the requirements} \textsc{for} \textsc{the degree} \textsc{of}\par
  \vspace{1em}%
  \@degreetitlefont\@condupper{@upperdegreetitle}{\@degreetitle}\par%
  \vspace{1em}%
  in \@facultyfont\@condupper{@upperfaculty}{\@faculty}\par%
  \vspace{1em}%
  \@program\par%
  \vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
\end{center}

These lines commented out 2005-01-03 due to new requirements.

% We accept this thesis as conforming \par%
% to the required standard \par%
% \vspace{5ex}
% \signatures{\@numberofsignatures}
Here we place the university name and copyright. The logo option can be used to include a small graphic logo here to the left of this information. To process this we need to compute the width of the text. Here we define a box with the text and defined the width and height of that box. We are using TeX primitives here:

\setbox0=\@logocopybare
\setlength{\@logocopywidth}{\wd0}

Now we construct the box of text centering the text within the box by using \hfil:

\settoheight{\@logocopyheight}{\@logocopy}
\settowidth{\@logowidth}{\@logo}

Now we actually typeset the logo and text centered:

\centerline{\hbox{\hfill\@logo\@logocopy\hspace{\@logowidth}}}

Here we see if \@copyrightnotice is empty. If so, we do not add an extra \vfil.

\if@empty\@copyrightnotice\else\vfil\@copyrightnotice\fi
\end{center}
\vfil\null

The page numbering should start on the abstract as page ii but the abstract should open on an odd page. Thus, if the \twoside option is chosen (which is not allowed by the library) then we will forgo this rule and leave the counter as it is. We should turn pagenumbering and headings on now, but the user will be responsible for this. If he/she follows the instructions in the sample file, this will happen automatically because the page numbers have been suppressed on the other pages.

\@AtStartOfAbstract{% \if@twoside\else \setcounter{page}{2}\fi %}

UBC also stipulates that “Every page except the title page must have a number on it. There must be no blank pages in the thesis.”, thus we redefine the empty pagestyle to be plain after the titlepage.

\@AfterTitlepage{\global\let\ps@empty\ps@plain}

Finally, we close off the file so that nothing else is put into the thesis class.

27 MIT: mitthesis.cls

This section defines the mitthesis.cls file.
27.1 Identification

This section identifies the version of the file. It also indicates which version of \LaTeX (\LaTeX2ε) is required and makes sure that an appropriate message is displayed when another \TeX format is used.

\NeedsTeXFormat{LaTeX2e}[1995/12/01]

Now we announce the file or class name and its version:

\ProvidesClass{mitthesis}[2015/05/31 v1.72 ^^J
Massachusetts Institute of Technology Thesis Class]

27.2 Initial Code

Here we load the main thesis class:

\LoadClassWithOptions{genthesis}

27.3 Declaration of Options

\ProcessOptions

27.4 Backwards Compatibility

These commands were defined in the previous MIT thesis class and are defined here for backwards compatibility. Note that \and is defined here. This contradicts the usual definition of \and for use with the \@author command, but that definition does not really work well with theses, so it has been removed.

\providecommand*{\MIT}{MASSACHUSETTS INSTITUTE OF TECHNOLOGY}
\providecommand*{\Mit}{Massachusetts Institute of Technology}
\providecommand*{\prevdegrees}{\previousdegrees{#1}}
\providecommand*{\thesisdate}{\date{#1}}
\providecommand*{\chairman}[2]{\departmentchair{#1}\departmentchairtitle{#2}}
\newcommand{\@abstractsupervisor}{}
\providecommand*{\supervisor}[2]{%\addsignature{Certified by}{#1 \ #2 \ Thesis Supervisor}  
Title: \#1\par%
% Title: \#2\par%
}
\newcommand{\and}{\degreeword{degrees}\par and \par}

27.5 Title Page

The MIT thesis class uses a different titlepage than Canadian schools. First we define the following new commands.

\providecommand*{\departmentchair}[1]{\gdef@departmentchair{\#1}}
\providecommand*{\departmentchairtitle}[1]{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchair given}%
\newcommand*{\departmentchairtitle}[1]{\gdef\@departmentchairtitle{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@departmentchairtitle}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchairtitle given}}
\newcommand*{\degreeword}[1]{\gdef\@degreeword{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@degreeword}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\degreeword given}}

\AtBeginDocument{\degreeword{degree}
\institution{Massachusetts Institute of Technology}
\institutionaddress{Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA}
\copyrighttext{\copyright \@author, \@copyrightyear. All rights reserved.}
\copyrightnotice{The author hereby grants to MIT permission to reproduce\*
and to distribute publicly paper and electronic\*
copies of this thesis document in whole or in part.}
\addsignature[l]{Signature of Author}{\@department\*
\@submitdate}
\supervisor{\@advisor}{\@advisortitle}
\addsignature[l]{Accepted by}{\@departmentchair\*
\@departmentchairtitle}
}
\renewcommand{\titlepage}{\begin{center}
\titlefont{\@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}\par}
\vspace{1em minus 1em}
\if@subtitle%
\subtitlefont{\@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}\par}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 1em}%
\fi
by\par
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\authorfont
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}%
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperdegrees}{Submitted to the \@department}\par%}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{\@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\par%}

\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchair given}%
\newcommand*{\departmentchairtitle}[1]{\gdef\@departmentchairtitle{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@departmentchairtitle}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchairtitle given}}
\newcommand*{\degreeword}[1]{\gdef\@degreeword{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@degreeword}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\degreeword given}}

\AtBeginDocument{\degreeword{degree}
\institution{Massachusetts Institute of Technology}
\institutionaddress{Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA}
\copyrighttext{\copyright \@author, \@copyrightyear. All rights reserved.}
\copyrightnotice{The author hereby grants to MIT permission to reproduce\*
and to distribute publicly paper and electronic\*
copies of this thesis document in whole or in part.}
\addsignature[l]{Signature of Author}{\@department\*
\@submitdate}
\supervisor{\@advisor}{\@advisortitle}
\addsignature[l]{Accepted by}{\@departmentchair\*
\@departmentchairtitle}
}
\renewcommand{\titlepage}{\begin{center}
\titlefont{\@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}\par}
\vspace{1em minus 1em}
\if@subtitle%
\subtitlefont{\@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}\par}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 1em}%
\fi
by\par
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\authorfont
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}%
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperdegrees}{Submitted to the \@department}\par%}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{\@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\par%}

\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchair given}%
\newcommand*{\departmentchairtitle}[1]{\gdef\@departmentchairtitle{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@departmentchairtitle}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchairtitle given}}
\newcommand*{\degreeword}[1]{\gdef\@degreeword{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@degreeword}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\degreeword given}}

\AtBeginDocument{\degreeword{degree}
\institution{Massachusetts Institute of Technology}
\institutionaddress{Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA}
\copyrighttext{\copyright \@author, \@copyrightyear. All rights reserved.}
\copyrightnotice{The author hereby grants to MIT permission to reproduce\*
and to distribute publicly paper and electronic\*
copies of this thesis document in whole or in part.}
\addsignature[l]{Signature of Author}{\@department\*
\@submitdate}
\supervisor{\@advisor}{\@advisortitle}
\addsignature[l]{Accepted by}{\@departmentchair\*
\@departmentchairtitle}
}
\renewcommand{\titlepage}{\begin{center}
\titlefont{\@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}\par}
\vspace{1em minus 1em}
\if@subtitle%
\subtitlefont{\@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}\par}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 1em}%
\fi
by\par
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\authorfont
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}%
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperdegrees}{Submitted to the \@department}\par%}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{\@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\par%}

\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchair given}%
\newcommand*{\departmentchairtitle}[1]{\gdef\@departmentchairtitle{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@departmentchairtitle}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\departmentchairtitle given}}
\newcommand*{\degreeword}[1]{\gdef\@degreeword{#1}}
\providecommand*{\@degreeword}{%
\ClassWarning{mitthesis}{No \noexpand\degreeword given}}

\AtBeginDocument{\degreeword{degree}
\institution{Massachusetts Institute of Technology}
\institutionaddress{Cambridge, Massachusetts, USA}
\copyrighttext{\copyright \@author, \@copyrightyear. All rights reserved.}
\copyrightnotice{The author hereby grants to MIT permission to reproduce\*
and to distribute publicly paper and electronic\*
copies of this thesis document in whole or in part.}
\addsignature[l]{Signature of Author}{\@department\*
\@submitdate}
\supervisor{\@advisor}{\@advisortitle}
\addsignature[l]{Accepted by}{\@departmentchair\*
\@departmentchairtitle}
}
\renewcommand{\titlepage}{\begin{center}
\titlefont{\@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}\par}
\vspace{1em minus 1em}
\if@subtitle%
\subtitlefont{\@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}\par}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 1em}%
\fi
by\par
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\authorfont
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}%
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%}
}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{@upperdegrees}{Submitted to the \@department}\par%}
\vspace{1em plus 1fil minus 0.5em}%
{\@condupper{\@upperinstitution}{\@institution}\par%}
27.6 Abstract

MIT has a very strange abstract page requirement, so we design it here from scratch.

abstract

\renewenvironment{abstract}{
  The abstract should start opening left:
  \clearpage
  Here we set the page to one column and reset the margins if needed.
  \begin{center}
  \thispagestyle{empty}
  {\titlefont
    {\@condupper{@uppertitle}{\@title}%
    \par%
  }
  \vspace{1em minus 1em}
  {\subtitlefont
    {\@condupper{@uppersubtitle}{\@subtitle}%
    \par%
  }
  \vspace{1em plus 0.5fil minus 1em}%
  {\authorfont
    {\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}%
    \par%
  }
  \vspace{1em plus 0.5fil minus 1em}%
  \fi
  by\par%
  \vspace{1em plus 0.5fil minus 0.5em}%
  {\authorfont
    {\@condupper{@upperauthor}{\@author}\par%
  }
  \vspace{1em plus 0.5fil minus 0.5em}%
  Submitted to the \@department\par%
  on \@date, in partial fulfillment of the\par%
  requirements for the \@degreeword of\par%
  \@degreedate\par
  \vspace{1em plus 0.5fil minus 0.5em}%
  \end{center}
}
We format the abstract as a section, but list it as a chapter in the table of contents

\begin{verbatim}
\def\@tempname{\@toupper{\abstractname}}
\section*{\@tempname}
\@mkboth{\@tempname}{\@tempname}
\addcontentsline{toc}{chapter}{\@fmttocentry{\abstractname}}
\end{verbatim}

Here is the end of the environment. We clear the page and reset the column spacing.

\begin{verbatim}
{\par
\vspace{1em}
\vfil
\setlength{\parindent}{0pt}
\@abstractsupervisor
\vspace{0pt plus 2fil}
\clearpage
\@endonecolumn
}
\end{verbatim}

Finally, we close off the file so that nothing else is put into the thesis class.

\end{verbatim}

Part VI

Change Log

Here is the explicit listing of all changes for this file. Please visit the project development page to see the complete list in detail:

- [http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis/changesets](http://bitbucket.org/mforbes/ubcthesis/changesets)

```plaintext
changeset: 153:29cf47fa10d
tag: tip
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 17:50:58 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: STY: removed trailing whitespace (emacs convention)

changeset: 152:0b0d4d7af6d
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Feb 02 01:01:40 2012 -0800
files: latexmkrc
description: Fixed bug with index generation command.

changeset: 151:1b81d5d5f7fa
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Feb 02 00:55:37 2012 -0800
files: latexmkrc
description: Fixed index generation error.
```

138
Merged with Chris' changes. Removed .pdf files.

Build in new directory to avoid contamination.

Tried adding some more stuff in teh "syntax file" for tex2lyx in python code, in order to treat lost spaces. No effect!

Updated python to make pdf outputs from tex and ltx. Included (added) pdf outputs to hg

First? version of makeUBCthesisLyXfromTeX.py. It's missing its Abstract! in order to get LyX to compile. Needs .layout file in ~/.lyx/layouts/
This fixes issue #1.
Added *starmark commands and an options starmark/nostarmark pair
to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters
and sections to reset the headers.
Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated
version number and log file in Makefile.

changeset: 101:f6e81c73f9c3
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:05:15 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag v1.62 for changeset 0f709d76d131.

changeset: 100:39c4d816ab20
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:05:01 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description:
Removed tag v1.62.

changeset: 99:b7ea33af71e6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 01:38:12 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tags as LaTeX versions.

changeset: 98:3b277d5021ac
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 01:04:21 2010 -0800
files: .hgignore Makefile tests/ubcsample1.tex ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Possibly fixed bibliography header bug.
Added hgid tagging in Makefile.

changeset: 97:0f709d76d131
tag: v1.62
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 11 20:29:05 2010 -0800
files: tests/ubcsample1.tex ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2583] Fixed the bibliography header bug (actually a bug with unnumbered
chapters in the mainmatter).

changeset: 96:349988e83441
tag: v1.61
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Tue Jan 05 11:32:48 2010 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2548] ubcthesis.dtx
Updated some documentation.

changeset: 95:2894dad5d0d2
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Nov 19 11:28:47 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2464] Fixed a pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

changeset: 94:fa0df1355f43
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Nov 18 16:08:22 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2465] Small fix in mainmatter: only inserts a blank page when twoside.
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1908] Unified chaptermark commands: only @chaptermark(No)Star should be modified. This fixes a runningheader bug that caused an extra \bibname to be displayed.
changeset: 74:0d65d857f926 branch: ubcthesis tag: v1.52 user: mforbes date: Mon Mar 24 08:41:51 2008 -0700 files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1857] - Added a comment for \advisor* commands in ubcsample because they have no effect.
- Changed Okanagan and Vancouver text to drop the Canada.
description: [svn r1811] Added instructions to make pdf files.
changeset: 72:44cea114d613 branch: ubcthesis tag: v1.52 user: mforbes date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800 files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1810] - Included @institutionaddress on titlepage as per new UBC Guidelines. Also mention this in sample files.
- Updated references to remove warning.
changeset: 71:f9689109a4d7 branch: ubcthesis tag: v1.49 user: mforbes date: Mon Feb 26 00:49:32 2007 -0800 files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1502] Fixed pagenumTR header bug.
changeset: 70:4cbb3a2114f3 branch: ubcthesis tag: v1.49 user: mforbes date: Mon Feb 26 00:37:56 2007 -0800 files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1501] Fixed @startonecolumn that was in a conditional and hence unmatched by \endonecolumn in the abstract. This showed itself when the \maketitle command was omitted.
changeset: 69:94df059a223b branch: ubcthesis tag: v1.48 user: mforbes date: Mon Feb 26 00:30:42 2007 -0800 files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1500] Fixed topmargin bug that was preventing this from being modified.
changeset: 68:709c3a47c711 branch: ubcthesis tag: v1.47 user: mforbes date: Tue Feb 20 16:03:35 2007 -0800 files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1499] Added thanks.
description: [svn r1497] Fixed spacing bug: The committee option reset the spacing to singlespacing at the \begin{document} command. Now it only modified the spacing if the committee option is selected.
Added the setspace package to the UBC sample comments to show how to change the spacing.

changeset: 66:8430b73d77b8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.46
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 22 15:48:03 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1456] Added sectionbib option to facilitate bibliographies in chapters for manuscript based theses.

changeset: 65:877b6692bb81
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.45
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 16 22:02:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1453] Added counter \@oldsecnumdepth to allow \frontmatter and \mainmatter to manipulate and reset this to suppress numberings in the frontmatter. This is needed so that packages like fancyhdr.sty work properly.

changeset: 64:0102b8bfb58e
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.44
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 10 17:45:05 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1443] Ignore files.

changeset: 63:96b9065d204a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.43
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:41:46 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1331] Fixed typo.

changeset: 62:beff47f12bb7
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.42
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:42:40 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1329] -Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added (no)appendicestoc options.
-Reverted \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
-Added \chaptermark... macro to factor out formatting.
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendicestoc and appendixpage to satisfy FoGS changes.

changeset: 61:62df1a122dd2
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.41
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:37:55 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1268] Remove .txt notes from final distribution (realclean)

changeset: 60:4897ee02371
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:37:55 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1267] -Fixed documentation error (first line).
-Added starred version \chaptermark to add unnumbered chapters to running headers (like the bibliography).
-Cleaned up \chaptermark definitions in headings pagestyle.
-Fixed some indentation errors and one changing \cs error.
-Added \chaptermark to the bibliography to fix bug in running headers. (Prior to this, unnumbered bibliography would not produce a running header).
Revamped class option sections. Namely, change ProcessOptions ->
ProcessOptions* so that defaults can be specified (the latter executes
options in the order called rather than the order defined.)
Added pagemak_ options for optional page number placement. This
involved mostly modification of the page style (ps@__) commands.
Added (no)bibnum option for optional numbering of the bibliography.
Altered ubcsample.tex in response to FoGS requests.

changeset: 50:3b99cf26af2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.22
user: sforges
date: Thu Feb 16 00:51:22 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1149] Substantial modifications of the ubcsample.tex file to bring it in
line with the FoGS requirements (thanks to Max Read and Joseph Tan for
their suggestions and changes).
Fixed typo \chapterbeforespace -> \chapterbeforeskip

changeset: 49:39efb6018e11
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.22
user: sforges
date: Wed Feb 15 21:56:15 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1148] Added Chris Dutchyn's changes:
Added tocitalic and notocitalic options.
Added some float package compatibility.
Added some header fixes.
Adjusted various spacing issues in headers.
Added various chapter headings explicitly to toc.
Fixed index placement with two-sided option.
Made ubc sample file default to ltp (as per FoGS request)

changeset: 48:3e8e6f65802e
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.21
user: sforges
date: Wed Nov 16 18:20:04 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1122] Fixed bug in sample files.

changeset: 47:5365f352fe3f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: sforges
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1121] Fixed web references in the sample files:
Removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Dutchyn)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: sforges
date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1117] Added nixsample as default target

changeset: 45:6e6f597d2ab0
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforges
date: Tue Nov 15 23:24:18 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1116] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 44:15480defa7fa
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforges
date: Tue Nov 15 23:19:34 2005 -0800
files: README ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1115] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu
Removed \chaptertoc and other redundant commands which should be replaced by \chapter[] with an optional argument.

Removed \preface, \acknowledgements and \foreword commands: these should simply be chapters.

Updated sample files to reflect these changes.
changeset: 34:a065bedf0480
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:46:29 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1001] Added new files to comments.

changeset: 33:d8c09c27d0ef
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:41:34 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1000] The new UBC Faculty of Graduate Studies rules forbid signatures from the cover and change some of its content, most notably that the department is now your program. Title page now reflects this, although macros are retained. Thanks to Darren Peets for these changes.

This also represents the start of a restructuring to move the university dependent information into smaller .cls files. The general class will be called genthesis.cls and the university specific ones ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.

changeset: 32:43db3d100f27
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.20
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jun 24 12:42:59 2004 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r833] Documentation and web references updated.

changeset: 31:425c2dcf0acb
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.19
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:40:17 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r733] Added sample.ps as a target (and sample.dvi)

changeset: 30:b6e54b14696a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:32:45 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r732] Added commands for making index.

changeset: 29:89b0cf2ea110
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 22:41:02 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r379] Modified To Do list...

changeset: 28:3088b5659c375
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.18
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 22:41:02 2002 -0800
files: TDOO ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r379] Modified To Do list...

changeset: 27:4c7f6a13f0b5
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.17
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 21:44:11 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r377] Reset the pagestyle to plain for the first page of a chapter. This is the default behaviour of the LaTeX classes and should be preserved for consistency: an option to change the behaviour should probably be provided...

152
Some large modification on title page: including adding \faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others: i.e. \faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.

Many uppercase options added: uppersubtitle, upperdegreetitle etc.

Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably tell me how to make this work properly!

Added \max, \maxn, \meng options. Also modified the number of signatures used by these options.

Fixed references in Acknowledgements page. (Links were correct, labels were not.)

TITLEPAGE:

Some large modification on title page: including adding \faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others: i.e. \faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.

Many uppercase options added: uppersubtitle, upperdegreetitle etc.

Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably tell me how to make this work properly!

Fixed bug with section heading interline spacing. Added some documentation.

Fixed bug with section heading interline spacing. Added some documentation.

153
[svn r202] Fixed a bug with starred sectioning commands. Also removed some magic numbers.

description:

Changeset: 19:e8160aa93ece
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 18 11:55:40 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 18:a99617016b17
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 17 16:13:42 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 17:83bde622e8f1
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:19:02 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 16:bd9a67487c9e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:07:04 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 15:eb2635cd96fb
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:56:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 14:a70c00834e5a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:52:07 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 13:7471ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:50:22 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 12:870491dcb15a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:46:15 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 11:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:43:09 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 10:7671ed39338f
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:39:45 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 9:9571ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:36:15 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 8:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:33:45 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 7:671ed3933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:31:15 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 6:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:28:45 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 5:9571ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:26:15 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 4:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:23:45 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 3:9571ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:21:15 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 2:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:18:45 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:

Changeset: 1:9571ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:16:15 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
Changeset: 10:e0fadf947d7d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:42:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r169] Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed.
(Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

Changeset: 9:28cc21eb4197
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 14 19:31:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r168] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE
adding headings to the toc file.
Added documentation and reorganized things.
Just about ready for release.

Changeset: 8:1b85833a16ad
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r165] Added CVS Id and Log.

Changeset: 7:9641442af9c5
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:10 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r164] Corrected minor typo.

Changeset: 6:023fef390555
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:33:04 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r163] Modified the CVS version id into file and added a log to the end.

Changeset: 5:95f106b113c2
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:52:03 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r162] Added CVS version id into file.

Changeset: 4:8679b85abd57
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:30:53 2002 -0800
files: TODO ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r161] Revised version. Many comments added and introduction etc.
greatly expanded.
Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).
Problems with & characters in .bib file fixed.

Changeset: 3:4c6e52ec8f89
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 09 08:33:07 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r118] There is a problem with the hyperref package. Takes out for now.
Except for above, \toupper appears to work now.
\partnamefont added to specify the font for the actual part name.
\chaptertoc option added to match chapterheads option.
Some modifications here and there: headers fixed so they align
properly. Part heading modified to use specified fonts. Uppercase
conversions done. \chaptersvg used for toc, lof, lot and bib for consistency.

155
Major revision. Now the document is based on the book class with modifications to make it look like a thesis. This should be considered the first real version as it is a drastic improvement over the other versions.

Converted ubcthesis package to a .ins and a .dtx distribution. Now, running LaTeX on the .ins file will generate everything from the .dtx file.

Initial commit of UBC thesis class.

Simplified Makefile using latexmk.

Added a note about pdflatex not working with psfrag.

Updated README to include a note about new class and latex ubcthesis.ins.
files: Makefile
description: Remove README too.

changeset: 107:9e25feb99e9b
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:29 2010 -0800
files: Makefile
description: Added tag v1.63 for changeset 0f54cd34e403

changeset: 106:0f54cd34e403
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.63
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:01 2010 -0800
files: Makefile
description: Fixed Makefile \{tag\} -> \{tags\}

changeset: 105:3465a7dafc32
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:14:41 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag v1.63 for changeset 7c7d0b8e48ab

changeset: 104:7c7d0b8e48ab
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:14:25 2010 -0800
files: Makefile
description: Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform...

changeset: 103:22afb6f8aa6c
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:38:17 2010 -0800
files: Makefile tests/genthesis.cls tests/mitthesis.cls tests/ubcsample1.tex tests/ubcthesis.cls ubcthesis.dtx
description: This fixes issue #1. Added *starmark commands and an optional starmark/nostarmark pair to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters and sections to reset the headers. Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated version number and log file in Makefile.

changeset: 101:f6e81c73f9c3
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:38:03 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag v1.62 for changeset 0f709d76d131

changeset: 100:39c4d816ab20
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:38:01 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: Removed tag v1.62

changeset: 99:b7ea33af71e6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 01:38:12 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: Added tags as LaTeX versions.
Possibly fixed bibliography header bug.
Added hgid tagging in Makefile
Added make realclean which gets rid of all non-tracked files and make distclean which makes the distribution suitable for publishing. (An hg revert will be needed to restore these files.)
Cleaned out some stuff like keyword expansion and change logs.
Still need to update version info before release.

Fixed the bibliography header bug (actually a bug with unnumbered chapters in the mainmatter).

Fixed pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

Small fix in mainmatter: only inserts a blank page when twoside.

Fixed bug with frontmatter that inserted a blank page before title. Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.

Cleanup before conversion to hg. May be in an inconsistent state.
files: README
description: [svn r2358] Added note about 1.58 fix.

changeset: 89:ee2d8b610c8d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Sep 13 18:01:07 2009 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2358] Fixed bug with pagination after \frontmatter by adding \if@skipblankpage checks.

changeset: 88:5f1bc7b59261
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.57
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:49:15 2009 -0800
files: Makefile

description: [svn r2357] Fixed bug with pagination after \frontmatter by adding \if@skipblankpage checks.

changeset: 87:a1354833839c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 14:49:02 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2116] Reverted default for ubcsample to openright.

changeset: 86:e7c85616e84d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:00:30 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2115] Added several passes with pdflatex.

changeset: 85:835b8dd304f8
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 14:51:49 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2114] Added openrightblank option in conformance with UBC FoGS. Cleaned up pagination and cleardoublepage structure and usage. Use pdflatex to make documentation so hyperref works nicely.

changeset: 84:7c120b1e6c9
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.56
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 15 00:03:31 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2108] CVS -> SVN

changeset: 83:6b0c867ff8e4
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:52:14 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2107] Remove data link too with realclean.

changeset: 82:0ed865bf1f30
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:53:09 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2106] Okay, really Final version 1.56 passing checksum!

changeset: 81:80c0867f8e4
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:52:14 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r2105] Final version 1.56: Provided \monthname command to remove dependency on the datetime package.
description:
[svn r1810] - Included \institutionaddress on titlepage as per new UBC Guidelines.
Also mention this in sample files.
- Updated references to remove warning.

changeset: 71:1f6681039a4e7
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.50
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:49:32 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1502] Fixed pagemanTR header bug.

changeset: 70:46611e211c0
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.49
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:37:56 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1501] Fixed \@startonecolumn that was in a conditional and hence unmatched
by the \@endonecolumn in the abstract. This showed itself when the
\maketitlecommand was omitted.

changeset: 69:68619b123b0
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.48
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:30:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1500] Fixed topmargin bug that was preventing this from being modified.

changeset: 68:70b3e77c211
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.47
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 16:03:35 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1498] Added thanks.

changeset: 67:3b3d677767d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 15:59:13 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1497] Fixed spacing bug: The committee option reset the spacing to
singlespacing at the \begin{document} command. Now it only modifies
the spacing if the committee option is selected.

changeset: 66:63b97b3797a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 22 15:48:03 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1496] Added sectionbib option to facilitate bibliographies in chapters for
manuscript based thesees.

changeset: 65:229f8838984
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 16 22:02:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1455] Added custom \maketitle command to allow \frontmatter and \mainmatter
to manipulate and reset this to suppress numberings in the
frontmatter. This is needed so that packages like fancyhdr.sty work
properly.

changeset: 64:010286c86a26
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 10 17:45:05 2007 -0800
Added some header fixes.
Adjusted various spacing issues in headers.
Added various chapter headings explicitly to toc.
Fixed index placement with two-sided option.

Made ubc sample file default to 11pt (as per FoGS request)

changeset: 48:2bed6f68db2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.31
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:20:04 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1122] Fixed bug in sample files.

changeset: 47:5365f352fe3f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1121] Fixed web references in the sample files.

removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Dutchy)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1117] Added mitsample as default target

changeset: 45:d6f857eebab5
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.28
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:24:18 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1116] Updated email and website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 44:154b80ea1afa
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.27
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:19:34 2005 -0800
files: README ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1115] Updated email and website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 43:93f872fd79d07
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.26
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:12:52 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1114] Removed \chaptertoc and other redundant commands which should be replaced by \chapter[]{ } with an optional argument.

Updated \preface, \acknowledgements and \foreword commands: these should simply be chapters.

Updated sample files to reflect these changes.

changeset: 42:067a8d59eef8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.25
user: mforbes
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1102] Partial commit.

changeset: 41:49551af83567
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Apr 15 17:50:26 2005 -0700
files: README
description:
[svn r1105] Added comments about ubcthesis needing gentheesis
This document appears to be a changelog or version history of changes made to a thesis template, specifically `ubcthesis.dtx` and related files. Each change is listed with details such as the user who made the change, the date, and a brief description of the changes made. The changes include fixes for typesetting bugs, updates to MIT references, changes to modular thesis options, and updates to the thesis class file structure.

For example, one of the changes is described as fixing a minor typesetting bug on the first page, while another adds the `[hypertex]` option as default for `hyperref`. Changes also mention the restructuring of the class file to separate university-specific information into smaller `.cls` files, with the general class file renamed to `genthesis.cls`.

The changeset details include the branch name (`ubcthesis`), the user (`mforbes`), the date of the change, and the file or files affected. Each change is dated and tagged as part of the version control system, indicating the version number changes from v1.21 to v1.20.

This document likely serves as a record for those working with or building upon the thesis template to understand the history of its development and the reasoning behind each change.
description:
[svn r833] Documentation and web references updated.

changeset: 31:425c02d0f0ab
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:40:17 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r733] Added sample.ps as a target (and sample.dvi)

changeset: 30:b654b14696a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:32:45 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r732] Added commands for making index.

changeset: 29:e9b0e5f2e110
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:20:09 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r731] Added fix for header overflow bug as suggested by James P. Zibin.
Messed a bit with change log and index. Now indices are generated, but this should be cleaned up.

changeset: 28:3088555c7ff5
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.18
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 22:41:02 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r379] Modified To Do list...

changeset: 27:8b7f0a13b0a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.17
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 21:44:11 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r377] Resets the pagestyle to plain for the first page of a chapter. This is the default behaviour of the LaTeX classes and should be preserved for consistency: an option to change the behaviour should probably be provided...

changeset: 26:6455555e90a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Aug 27 11:43:17 2002 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r270] Added normalize command at end of maketitle.
changed includegraphics command to be compatible with graphics and graphicx

changeset: 25:85f684f47370
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.15
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jul 18 11:17:29 2002 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r265] *** empty log message ***

changeset: 24:46d2ee8ee805
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jul 04 22:05:55 2002 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r255] Some font fixes suggested by Darren concerning the titlepage.

changeset: 23:7a778b1c1399
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.14
user: mforbes

Corrected various spelling mistakes.

Added ma, mac, meng options. Also modified the number of signatures used by these options.

Fixed references in Acknowledgements page. (Links were correct, labels were not.)

**TITLEPAGE**

Some large modification on title page: including adding \Faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others:

i.e. \Faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.

Many uppercase options added: uppertitle, uppersubtitle etc.

Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A \TeX gurus could probably tell me how to make this work properly!

---

Changed Forward -> Foreword

---

Some bug fixes. Committee spacing fixed, header overfulls warnings removed (but not well) and a few numbering bugs fixed (section numbering as well as the copyright year).

---

Some bug fixes. Committee spacing fixed, header overfulls warnings removed (but not well) and a few numbering bugs fixed (section numbering as well as the copyright year).
changeset: 16:bd9a67487c9e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:09:11 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r175] Refined clean process.

changeset: 15:eb2635cd96fb
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:07:04 2002 -0800
files: BUGS README
description:
[svn r174] Update including bug list.

changeset: 14:a70c00834e5a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:56:18 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description:
[svn r173] Updated. Now Makefile is not distributed: make clean removes it and the CVS directory.

changeset: 13:7471ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:52:07 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r172] Included -f flag to suppress rm errors.

changeset: 12:870491dcb15a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:50:22 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r171] Included target clean:

changeset: 11:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:43:09 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description:
[svn r170] Initial commit of supporting files.

changeset: 10:e0fadf947d7d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:42:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r169] Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed. (Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

changeset: 9:28cc21a4b41f
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 14 19:31:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r168] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

changeset: 8:1b85833a16ad
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r165] Added CVS Id and Log.

changeset: 7:9e414442e9f5
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r164] Added CVS Id and Log.
Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).
Problems with @ characters in .bib file fixed.

Some modifications here and there: headers fixed so they align properly. Part heading modified to use specified fonts. Uppercase conversions done. \chaptertoc used for toc, lof, lot and bib for consistency.

Conversion ubthesis package to a .ins and a .dtx distribution. Now, running LaTeX on the .ins file will generate everything from the .dtx file.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Changeset</th>
<th>User</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Files</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>152</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Thu Feb 02 01:46 2012</td>
<td>ubcthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Fixed bug with index generation command.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Thu Feb 02 00:58:37 2012</td>
<td>ubcthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Fixed index generation error.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Thu Feb 02 00:48:00 2012</td>
<td>ubcthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Added a note about pdflatex not working with psfrag.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>149</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Thu Feb 02 00:37:37 2012</td>
<td>ubcthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Simplified Makefile using latexmk. Removed .ps dependency... pdf is ubiquitous now.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>147</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Wed Nov 30 17:40:14 2011</td>
<td>Makefile</td>
<td>Updated README to include a note about new class and latex ubcthesis.ins.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>146</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Tue Nov 29 21:20:21 2011</td>
<td>ubcthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Added tag v1.69 for changeset f86b2de1f2c2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>145</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Tue Nov 29 21:27:57 2011</td>
<td>ubcthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Added documentation about fix and updated to version 1.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>144</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Tue Nov 29 21:26:04 2011</td>
<td>ubthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Merged lys and default branches... there is only one branch.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>143</td>
<td>M. McNeil Forbes</td>
<td>Tue Nov 29 21:16:00 2011</td>
<td>ubthesis.dtx</td>
<td>Fixed #11. Add hooks to change \contentsname etc. if babel loaded.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Updated checksum and Makefile

changeset: 132:ec643d747b53
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Jul 17 05:53:13 2010 -0700
files: lyc/makeUBCthesisLyXfromTeX.py lyc/tex2lyx2texSample.tex lyc/ubcsamplelyx.lyx ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated python script:
- Allowing the use of %%% comments to become Notes
- %% comments become Comments (collapsed by default)
- % comments etc. still ERT (now collapsed).
- All output goes in a separate directory.

changeset: 131:ae1204c7848e
branch: lys
parent: 130:ae2b6871f579
parent: 128:1f4d14cb81a7
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jul 16 17:01:20 2010 -0700

description: Merged with Chris' changes. Removed .pdf files.

changeset: 130:ae2b6871f579
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jul 16 16:51:57 2010 -0700

description: Build in a new directory to avoid contamination.

changeset: 129:fa7ea841577c
branch: lys
parent: 128:1f4d14cb81a7
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jul 16 16:43:23 2010 -0700

description: Use environment vars TEX2LY, LYX and DIFF if they exist to specify program names (these are different on Mac OS X).

changeset: 128:b4528772a8d4
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jul 16 15:45:29 2010 -0700
files: lyc/lyx/handmade-ubcsamplelyx.pdf

description: Updated python to make pdf outputs from tex and lyc. Included (added) pdf outputs to hg

changeset: 127:0e63d6a6a097
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jul 16 15:33:50 2010 -0700
files: lyc/lyx/ubcsamplelyx.lyx lyc/ubcthesis.layout

description: Completed LyX support and added documentation:
Added not about tocloft, but sticking with float.

Added tag 1.6 for changeset 4cfb190f5196

Updated version to 1.64

Use pdflscape to rotate landscape pages in pdf file.

fixed README too.

Fixed Makefile (tag) => (tags)

Added tag v1.63 for changeset 0f54cd34e03
Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform.

- Added tag v1.63 for changeset ae7afd1eaf0d
- Added *starmark commands and an optional starmark/nostarmark pair to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters and sections to reset the headers.
- Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated version number and log file in Makefile.

Possibly fixed bibliography header bug. Added hg id tagging in Makefile. Added make realclean which gets rid of all non-tracked files and make distclean which make the distribution suitable for publishing. (An hg revert will be needed to restore these files.) Cleaned out some stuff like keyword expansion and change logs. Still need to update version info before release.

Possibly fixed bibliography header bug. Added hg id tagging in Makefile. Added make realclean which gets rid of all non-tracked files and make distclean which make the distribution suitable for publishing. (An hg revert will be needed to restore these files.) Cleaned out some stuff like keyword expansion and change logs. Still need to update version info before release.

Possibly fixed bibliography header bug. Added hg id tagging in Makefile. Added make realclean which gets rid of all non-tracked files and make distclean which make the distribution suitable for publishing. (An hg revert will be needed to restore these files.) Cleaned out some stuff like keyword expansion and change logs. Still need to update version info before release.

Possibly fixed bibliography header bug. Added hg id tagging in Makefile. Added make realclean which gets rid of all non-tracked files and make distclean which make the distribution suitable for publishing. (An hg revert will be needed to restore these files.) Cleaned out some stuff like keyword expansion and change logs. Still need to update version info before release.
Updated some documentation.

Fixed a pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

Small fix in mainmatter: only inserts a blank page when twoside.

Fixed bug with frommatter that inserted a blank page before title. Thank you for pointing this out.

Cleanup before conversion to hg. May be in an inconsistent state.

Fixed bug in documentation.

Added note about 1.58 fix.

Fixed bug with pagination after \frontmatter by adding \if@skipblankpage checks.

Reverted default for ubcsample to openright.

Added several passes with pdflatex.
date: Sat Aug 09 17:54:10 2008 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:

changeset: 76:4c15a8759599
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Aug 09 17:51:32 2008 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1993] - Simplified marking instructions (removed \chaptermark* etc.) to keep with standard LaTeX
- Added better support for natbib package, including fixing bug with numbering not being reset between sections of a manuscript based thesis.

changeset: 75:ff54af42fa4a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.33
user: mforbes
date: Mon May 19 17:58:46 2008 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1908] Unified chaptermark commands: only @chaptermark(No)Star should be modified. This fixes a runningheader bug that caused an extra \Chaptername to be displayed.

changeset: 74:255f85307fc6
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.32
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:24:48 2008 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1811] Added instructions to make pdf files.

changeset: 73:3b00651f44d6
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.31
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1810] - Included @institutionaddress on titlepage as per new UBC Guidelines.
- Updated references to remove warning.

changeset: 72:4c14e1414613
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1501] Fixed @startonecolumn that was in a conditional and hence unmatched by the @endonecolumn in the abstract. This showed itself when the \maketitle command was omitted.

changeset: 71:6589109467
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1500] Fixed \betacentres that was in a conditional and hence unmatched by the \endbetacentres in the abstract. This showed itself when the \maketitle command was omitted.

changeset: 70:4e5f22211c0
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.28
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1502] Fixed pagernumTR header bug.

changeset: 69:6a9f9d91239c
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.28
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1500] Fixed topmargin bug that was preventing this from being modified.

changeset: 68:709c2a17c211  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.47  
user: mforbes  
date: Tue Feb 20 16:03:35 2007 -0800  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1498] Added thanks.

changeset: 67:3c034697a7e6  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.46  
user: mforbes  
date: Tue Feb 20 15:59:13 2007 -0800  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1497] Fixed spacing bug: The committee option reset the spacing to singlespacing at the \begin{document} command. Now it only modified the spacing if the committee option is selected.

Added the setspace package to the UBC sample comments to show how to change the spacing.

changeset: 66:8d330739f78a  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.45  
user: mforbes  
date: Mon Jan 22 15:48:03 2007 -0800  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1456] Added sectionbib option to facilitate bibliographies in chapters for manuscript based thesees.

changeset: 65:877d6b93b8cb  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.44  
user: mforbes  
date: Tue Jan 16 22:02:42 2007 -0800  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1453] Added \c@oldsecnumdepth to allow \frontmatter and \mainmatter to manipulate and reset this to suppress numberings in the frontmatter. This is needed so that packages like fancyhdr.sty work properly.

changeset: 64:010298cb5e26  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.43  
user: mforbes  
date: Wed Jan 10 17:45:05 2007 -0800  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1443] Ignore files.

changeset: 63:96b9065d204a  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.42  
user: mforbes  
date: Sun Oct 22 01:41:46 2006 -0700  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1331] Fixed typo.

changeset: 62:beff47128770  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.41  
user: mforbes  
date: Sun Oct 22 01:29:58 2006 -0700  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r1330] -Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.  
-Added \appendixtoc\options.  
-Reverted \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.  
-Added \faketoc... macro to factor out formatting.  
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.  
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include \appendixtoc\ and \appendixpage to satisfy FoGS changes.

changeset: 61:02f1a3228d2  
branch: ubcthesis  

simple clean which just gets rid of junk.

changeset: 52:cdade1d0cea6
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.35
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:41:51 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1152] Modified comment error. (Don't use __ in comments!)

changeset: 51:8035ecf55b6d
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.34
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:38:44 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1151] Added "Parts" organization for documentation (removed "File" tag for this)
Switched to \LaTeX{} so trailing space may be flexible.
Revamped class option sections. Namely, change ProcessOptions ->
ProcessOptions3 so that defaults can be specified (the latter executes
options in the order called rather than the order defined.)
Added pagename__ options for optional page number placement. This
involved mostly modification of the page style (ps@__) commands.
Added (no)minimum option for optional numbering of the bibliography.
Altered ubcsample.tex in response to FoGS requests.

changeset: 50:3b99cf26af2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.33
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 16 00:51:22 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1149] Substantial modifications of the ubcsample.tex file to bring it in
line with the FoGS requirements (thanks to Max Read and Joseph Tam for
these suggestions and changes)
Fixed typo \chapterbeforespace -> \chapterbeforeskip

changeset: 49:39efb6018e11
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.32
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 15 21:56:15 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1148] Added Chris Dutchyn’s changes:
Added tocitalic and notocitalic options.
Added some float package compatibility.
Added some header fixes.
Adjusted various spacing issues in headers.
Added various chapter headings explicitly to toc.
Fixed index placement with two-sided option.
Made ubcsample file default to 11pt (as per FoGS request)

changeset: 48:2bed6f68db2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.31
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:20:04 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1140] Fixed bug in sample files.

changeset: 47:5365f352fe3f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1140] Added web references in the sample files;
 Removed number from 	hebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Dutchyn)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
This represents the start of a restructuring to move the university dependent information into smaller .cls files. The general class will be called genthesis.cls and the university specific ones ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.

This also represents a start to allow for modular theses.
changeset:   28:9088b5cb375  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.18  
user: mforbes  
date: Sat Dec 14 22:41:02 2002 -0800  
files: TODO ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r379] Modified To Do list...  

changeset:   27:4b787a13db9e  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.17  
user: mforbes  
date: Sat Dec 14 21:44:11 2002 -0800  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r377] Resets the pagesyle to plain for the first page of a chapter. This  
is the default behaviour of the LaTeX classes and should be preserved  
for consistency; an option to change the behaviour should probably be  
provided...  

changeset:   26:c4855b5ec90a  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.16  
user: mforbes  
date: Tue Aug 27 11:43:17 2002 -0700  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r270] Added normalsize command at end of maketitle.  
changed includegraphics command to be compatible with  
graphics and graphicx  

changeset:   25:a68cbf47370b  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.15  
user: mforbes  
date: Thu Jul 18 11:17:29 2002 -0700  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r265] *** empty log message ***  

changeset:   24:34029bee5606  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.14  
user: mforbes  
date: Thu Jul 04 22:05:55 2002 -0700  
files: ubcthesis.dtx  
description:  
[svn r255] Some font fixes suggested by Darren concerning the titlepage.  
Corrected various spelling mistakes.  
Added ma,mas,meq options. Also modified the number of signatures  
used by these options.  
Fixed references in Acknowledgements page. (Links were correct,  
labels were not.)  

TITLEPAGE:  
Some large modification on title page: including adding Faculty  
command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others:  
i.e. Faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.  
Many uppercase options added: uppercase, upperdecrtitle etc.  
Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This  
contribution was from Darren Peets.  
Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given  
within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably  
tell me how to make this work properly!  

changeset:   22:10afcbd7b4e3  
branch: ubcthesis  
tag: v1.13  
user: mforbes  
date: Wed Mar 27 18:30:39 2002 -0800  

188
files: Makefile
description: [svn r172] Included -f flag to suppress rm errors.

description: [svn r171] Included target clean.

files: Makefile README
description: [svn r170] Initial commit of supporting files.

files: ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r169] Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed.
(Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r168] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE
adding headings to the toc file.

files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r166] Added CVS Id and Log.

files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r165] Corrected minor typo.

files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r162] Added CVS version id into file and added a log to the end.

files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r161] Revised version. Many comments added and introduction etc. greatly
expanded.
Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).
Problems with @ characters in .bib file fixed.

Changelog:

Changeset: 3:4c6e52ec8f89
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Tue Oct 09 08:33:07 2001 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: [svn r118] There is a problem with the hyperref package. Taken out for now.

Changeset: 2:18b53a902e8b
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Tue Oct 02 15:32:49 2001 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx, ubcthesis.ins
Description: [svn r109] Major revision. Now the document is based on the book class with modifications to make it look like a thesis. This should be considered the first real version as it is a drastic improvement over the other versions.

Changeset: 1:43dbbaf7333c
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Thu Sep 27 17:20:51 2001 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx, ubcthesis.ins
Description: [svn r108] Converted ubcthesis package to a .ins and a .dtx distribution. Now, running LaTeX on the .ins file will generate everything from the .dtx file.

Changeset: 0:c02300bce276
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Wed Sep 19 16:49:57 2001 -0700
Files: TODO, fig.eps, fig.fig
Description: [svn r107] Initial commit of UBC thesis class.

Changeset: 160:4e26a3be02fc
Tag: tip
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Thu Mar 26 18:00:55 2015 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description: Added tag v1.71 for changeset b4d6c97c08af

Changeset: 159:b4d6c97c08af
Tag: v1.71
Parent: 157:66bf0d802c3b
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Thu Mar 26 17:55:18 2015 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: BUG: Added dotted leaders to part line in toc for UBC thesis

Changeset: 157:66bf0d802c3b
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Thu Mar 26 17:50:58 2015 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: STY: removed trailing whitespace (emacs convention)

Changeset: 156:f4c450ff6a3f
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Sat Apr 07 00:59:07 2012 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description: Added tag v1.70 for changeset 20244e11cf3
Fixed issue 12. Move \backmatter to after appendices in sample theses.

Fixed bug with index generation command.

Fixed index generation error.

Added a note about pdflatex not working with psfrag.

Simplified Makefile using latexmk.

Removed \psfrag dependency... pdf is ubiquitous now.

Added .cls files to tgz file.

Updated README to include a note about new class and latex ubcthesis.ins.

Added tag v1.69 for changeset F86B2De1F2c2

Added documentation about fix and updated to version 1.69

Merged lyx and default branches... there is only one branch.
Fixed #11. Add hooks to change `\contentsname` etc. if babel loaded.

changeset: 142:ebabdedec038
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Jul 27 18:46:02 2011 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated checksum.

changeset: 141:88b8c7c22f6b
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Jul 27 16:38:40 2011 -0700
files: README ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated README and removed an erroneous comment from the MIT sample.

changeset: 140:d891cf6a6086
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Dec 09 12:32:00 2010 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Fixes issue 10 with babel and "TeX capacity exceeded".

changeset: 139:3b5e187f216b
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Mon Aug 30 12:31:49 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated checksum.

changeset: 138:a3f13eed3ce0
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Mon Aug 30 12:24:45 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Fixed errors with ubcsample as pointed out by Max Read.

changeset: 137:05473c0477a0
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Aug 28 20:39:48 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Added backmatter to sample thesis.

changeset: 136:88d47686c54a
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Aug 28 11:10:14 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag v1.67 for changeset 688fa1bf572f

changeset: 135:688fa1bf572f
branch: lys
tag: v1.67
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Aug 28 11:10:27 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Version v1.67: Updated ubcsample.tex to conform to Sept. 2010 requirements.
- Moved Statement of Co-authorship to Prefix.
- Added new demo reverence to sample.bib.

changeset: 134:5701c6f0ebc2
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Jul 17 20:45:29 2010 -0700
files: lys/macros/thesis/thesis.lyx lys/ubcthesis.layout
description: Fixed `\maketitle`
Updated checksum and Makefile.

Updated python script:
- Allow the use of %% comments to become Notes
- % comments become Comments (collapsed by default)
- All output goes in a separate directory.

Merged with Chris' changes. Removed .pdf files.

Build in new directory to avoid contamination.

Tried adding some more stuff in the "syntax file" for tex2lyx in python code, in order to treat lost spaces. No effect!

Updated python to make pdf outputs from tex and lyx. Included (added) pdf outputs to hg

Updated python to make pdf outputs from tex and lyx. Included (added) pdf outputs to kg

First? version of makeUBCthesisLyXfromTeX.py. It's missing its Abstract! in order to get lyx to compile. Needs .layout file in ~/.lyx/layouts/
Completed LyX support and added documentation:
- Added documentation about babel bug: see issue 6.
- Conditionally include hg files: fixes issue 5.
- Changed hyperref colours: fixes issue 4 (but still uses boxes).
- Changed href -> url to simplify.

changeset: 123:430040464a0f
parent: 121:42b3507a138
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jun 25 00:33:36 2010 -0400
description:
Marked ubcthesis branch as default.

changeset: 122:4b6476b62214
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Fri Jun 25 00:32:24 2010 -0400
description:
Initial LyX version.

changeset: 121:42b3507a138
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed May 05 15:41:59 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag v1.65 for changeset bb408ef167bf

changeset: 120:bb408ef167bf
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.65
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed May 05 15:38:12 2010 -0700
files: Makefile
description:
Don’t remove hginfo.tar.gz as this is needed to build documentation.
(This is removed by realclean.)

changeset: 119:e767d264e26b
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed May 05 15:20:17 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added some notes about appendicesname and hyperref to sample files.
Make linktocpage a default hyperref option in the sample file.

changeset: 118:2567c699ee23
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:55:41 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag v1.64 for changeset 4011f5637f8

changeset: 117:d011f5637f8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.64
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:55:02 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Removed tag 1.64

changeset: 116:b4270c1a1239
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:49:49 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 67106aad55e

changeset: 115:67106aad55e
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:49:18 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 03702ebbe47
changeset: 114:03709eebee47
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:44:06 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Added not about tocloft, but sticking with float.

changeset: 113:f5c09d16d87e
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:43:51 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag 1.64 for changeset 4cfb190f5196

changeset: 112:4cfb190f5196
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:34 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated version to 1.64.

changeset: 111:fa4c3f9cf243
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:16 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag 1.64 for changeset ffba4ff323a6

changeset: 110:ffba4ff323a6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:25:13 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated checksum.

changeset: 109:65d5d28fea7d
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:26:02 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Use pdflscape to rotate landscape pages in pdf file.

changeset: 108:694ee8798dae
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:24:51 2010 -0800
files: Makefile
description: Remove README too.

changeset: 107:9e25feb99e9b
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:29 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag v1.63 for changeset 0f54cd34e403

changeset: 106:0f54cd34e403
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.63
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:29 2010 -0800
files: Makefile
description: Fixed README (tag) -> (tags)

changeset: 105:3465a7dafc32
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:14:41 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag v1.63 for changeset 7c7b08e49a6

196
Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform...

Added tag v1.63 for changeset ae7afd1eaf0d

This fixes issue #1.

Added *starmark commands and an optiona starmark/nostarmark pair
to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters
and sections to reset the headers.

Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated
version number and log file in Makefile.

Possibly fixed bibliography header bug.

Added hgid tagging in Makefile.

Still need to update version info before release.
changeset: 86:e7c85616e84d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:00:30 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2114] Added thanks.

changeset: 85:835bd4dd504f8
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 14:51:49 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2113] Added openrightblank option in conformance with UBC FoGS.
Cleaned up pagination and cleardoublepage structure and usage.
Use pdflatex to make documentation so hyperref works nicely.

changeset: 84:7c1289e1ccc9
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.56
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 15 00:03:31 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2108] CVS -> SVN

changeset: 83:ba996b5d6410
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:54:29 2009 -0800
files: Makefile
Description:
[svn r2107] Remove data link too with realclean.

changeset: 82:cd8965b1ff30
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:52:09 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2106] Okay, really Final version 1.56 passing checksum!

changeset: 81:80c0b36f768e4
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:52:14 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2105] Final version 1.56: Provided \monthname command to remove dependency
on the datetimetype package.

changeset: 80:8723b6b0a364
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:29:57 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2104] Updated version to 1.56 and fixed some bugs on titlepage suggested by
Darren including centering vertically, even-odd margins and updated
date format.

changeset: 79:b6c62af871f9
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.55
user: mforbes
date: Wed Dec 03 20:26:59 2008 -0800
files: data
description:
[svn r2103] Added link to data.

changeset: 78:cf2ff6664a65
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Dec 03 20:28:39 2008 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2102] Added a missing brace!

changeset: 77:29b1cc7f6451
date: Mon Feb 26 00:30:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1500] Fixed topmargin bug that was preventing this from being modified.

changeset: 68:709c2a177211
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.47
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 16:03:35 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1498] Added thanks.

changeset: 67:3c034697a7e6
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 15:59:13 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1497] Fixed spacing bug: The committee option reset the spacing to singlespacing at the \begin{document} command. Now it only modifies the spacing of the committee option is selected.

Added the setspace package to the UBC sample comments to show how to change the spacing.

changeset: 66:843507397f78a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jun 22 15:48:03 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1456] Added sectionbib option to facilitate bibliographies in chapters for manuscript based theses.

changeset: 65:877db6893b81
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jun 16 22:02:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1453] Added counter \c@oldsecnumdepth to allow \frontmatter and \mainmatter to manipulate and reset this to suppress numberings in the \frontmatter. This is needed so that packages like fancyhdr.sty work properly.

changeset: 64:010298cb5e26
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jun 10 17:45:05 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1443] Ignore files.

changeset: 63:96b9065d204a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:41:46 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1331] Fixed typo.

changeset: 62:bef4f7128770
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:29:58 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1330] Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added (no)appendicestoc options.
-Changed \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
-Added \appendix command to provide toc table and properly implement options.
-Added \appendixpage macro to factor out formatting.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendicestoc and appendixpage to satisfy FoDS changes.

201
Modified sample ubcthesis to include more package examples. Makefile now has target realclean which gets rid of CVS stuff and a simple clean which just gets rid of junk.

changeset: 52:cdabedc30ead
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.35
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:41:51 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1154] Modified sample ubcthesis to include more package examples. Makefile now has target realclean which gets rid of CVS stuff and a simple clean which just gets rid of junk.

changeset: 51:8035ecf55b6d
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.34
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:38:44 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1152] Modified comment error. (Don’t use __ in comments!)

changeset: 50:3b99cf26af2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.33
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 16 00:51:22 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1151] Added “Parts” organization for documentation (removed “File” tag for this)
Switched to LaTeX so trailing spaces may be flexible.
Rewrote class option sections. Namely, change ProcessOptions to
ProcessOptions so that defaults can be specified (the latter executes
options in the order called rather than the order defined.)
Added pagename_* options for optional page number placement. This
involved mostly modification of the page style (ps@__) commands.
Added (no)bibnum option for optional numbering of the bibliography.
Altered ubcsample.tex in response to FoGS requests.

changeset: 49:39efb6018e11
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.32
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 15 21:56:15 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1148] Added Chris Dutchyn’s changes:
Added tocitalic and notocitalic options.
Added some float package compatibility.
Added some header fixes.
Adjusted various spacing issues in headers.
Added various chapter headings explicitly to toc.
Fixed index placement with two-sided option.
Made ubc sample file default to 11pt (as per FoGS request)

changeset: 48:2bed6f68db2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.31
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:20:04 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1140] Made ubc sample file default to 11pt (as per FoGS request)

changeset: 47:5365f352fe3f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1121] Fixed web references in the sample files.
Removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Dutchy)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
changeset: 37:79db75c5756e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Mar 08 14:18:36 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1008] Changes on the way to allowing for modular theses.

changeset: 36:63f0bbc73a50
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:56:11 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1003] Fixed minor restructuring change.

changeset: 35:b88516793c60
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:52:32 2005 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:

changeset: 34:a065bedf0480
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:46:29 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1001] Added new files to comments.

changeset: 33:d8c09c27d0ef
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.20
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jun 24 12:42:59 2004 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r833] Documentation and web references updated.

changeset: 32:43db3d100f27
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.19
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:40:17 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r732] Added commands for making index.
[svn r731] Added fix for header overflow bug as suggested by James P. Zibin. Messed a bit with change log and index. Now indices are generated, but this should be cleaned up.
TITLEPAGE

Some large modification on title page: including adding Faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others: i.e. Faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.

Many uppercase options added: uppersubtitle, upperdegreedtitle etc.

Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably tell us how to make this work properly!

changeset: 22:10afcbd7b4e3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: vl.14
user: mforbes
date: Thu Apr 21 16:24:02 2002 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r226] Some font fixes suggested by Darren concerning the titlepage.
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:52:07 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r172] Included -f flag to suppress rm errors.

changeset: 12:8704d1d7b15a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:50:22 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r171] Included target clean

changeset: 11:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:43:09 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description: [svn r170] Initial commit of supporting files.

changeset: 10:e0fadf947d7d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:42:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r169] Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed. (Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

changeset: 9:28cc21eb4197
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 14 19:31:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r168] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

Added documentation and reorganized things.

Just about ready for release.

changeset: 8:1b85833a16ad
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r165] Added CVS Id and Log.

changeset: 7:9641442af9c5
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:10 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r164] Corrected minor typo.

changeset: 6:82d2f634d555
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:33:04 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r163] Modified the CVS version id into file and added a log to the end.

changeset: 5:9f210db113c2
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:52:03 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r162] Added CVS version id into file.

changeset: 4:5e794a5d5437
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:30:33 2002 -0800
files: TODO ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r161] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

Added documentation and reorganized things.

Just about ready for release.

changeset: 3:353c6f3e9a1c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:30:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r160] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

Added documentation and reorganized things.

Just about ready for release.
Revised version. Many comments added and introduction etc. greatly expanded.

Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).

Problems with % characters in .bib file fixed.

Some modifications here and there: headers fixed so they align properly. Part heading modified to use specified fonts. Uppercase conversions done. \partnamefont used for toc, lof, lot and bib for consistency.

Major revision. Now the document is based on the book class with modifications to make it look like a thesis. This should be considered the first real version as it is a drastic improvement over the other versions.

Converted ubcthesis package to a .ins and a .dtx distribution. Now, running LaTeX on the .ins file will generate everything from the .dtx file.

Initial commit of UBC thesis class.

Remove extension for figures.

Added tag v1.71 for changeset b4d6c97c08af.

BUG: Added dotted leaders to part line in toc for UBC thesis

STY: removed trailing whitespace (emacs convention)
description: Merged lyx and default branches... there is only one branch.

changeset: 143:7a6bf679b321
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Tue Nov 29 21:16:00 2011 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Fixed #11. Add hooks to change \contentsname etc. if babel loaded.

changeset: 142:eac96d45038b
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Jul 27 16:49:02 2011 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated checksum.

changeset: 141:6889ec7c22fb
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Jul 27 16:39:40 2011 -0700
files: README ubcthesis.dtx
description: Updated README and removed an erroneous comment from the MIT sample.

changeset: 140:0d91c1fd80df
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Dec 09 12:32:00 2010 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Fixed errors with ubcsample as pointed out by Max Read.

changeset: 139:3b5e187f216b
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Mon Aug 30 12:31:49 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Added backmatter to sample thesis.

changeset: 138:88e1be4af3e0
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Aug 28 20:39:48 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Added tag v1.67 for changeset 688fa1bf572f

changeset: 137:05473c0477ac
branch: lys
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Aug 28 11:10:27 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description: Version v1.67: Updated ubcsample.tar to conform to Sept. 2010 requirements.
- Nixed Statement of Co-authorship to Prefix.
- Added new demo reverence to sample.bib.

changeset: 136:5701c6f0ebc2
branch: lys
tag: v1.67
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Aug 28 11:10:19 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Version v1.67: Updated ubcsample.tar to conform to Sept. 2010 requirements.
- Nixed Statement of Co-authorship to Prefix.
- Added new demo reverence to sample.bib.
First? version of makeUBCThesisLyXfromTeX.py. It's missing its Abstract! in order to get LyX to compile. Needs .layout file in ~/lyx/layouts/

Changeset: 124:0e63d6a6a097
Branch: lyx
Parent: 122:d4b47bb62214
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Tue Jul 13 18:42:01 2010 -0700
Files: lyc/ubcsamplelyx.lyx lyc/ubcthesis.layout ubcsamplelyx.lyx ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.layout
Description:
Completed LyX support and added documentation:
- Added documentation about babel tag: see issue 6.
- Conditionally include hg files: fixes issue 5.
- Changed hyperref colours: fixes issue 4 (but still uses boxes).
- Changed href -> url to simplify.

Changeset: 123:430040441ad9
Branch: lyx
Parent: 121:d2185807a136
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Fri Jun 25 00:33:36 2010 -0400
Description:
Marked ubcthesis branch as default.

Changeset: 122:d4b47bb62214
Branch: lyx
Parent: 121:d2185807a136
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Fri Jun 25 00:32:24 2010 -0400
Files: ubcsamplelyx.lyx ubcthesis.layout
Description:
Initial LyX version.

Changeset: 121:d2185807a136
Branch: ubcthesis
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Wed May 05 15:41:39 2010 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description:
Added tag v1.65 for changeset bb408ef167bf

Changeset: 120:bb408ef167bf
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.65
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Wed May 05 15:39:12 2010 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description:
Don't remove hginfo.tex as this is needed to build documentation.
(This is removed by realclean.)

Changeset: 119:e767d264e26b
Branch: ubcthesis
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Wed May 05 15:29:17 2010 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description:
Added tag v1.64 for changeset d011f85637f8

Changeset: 118:d011f85637f8
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.64
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Wed Apr 14 12:55:41 2010 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description:
Don't remove hginfo.tex as this is needed to build documentation.

Changeset: 117:d011f85637f8
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.64
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Wed Apr 14 12:53:17 2010 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description:
Removed tag 1.64

Changeset: 116:b4270c1a1239
Branch: ubcthesis
User: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
Date: Wed Apr 14 12:49:49 2010 -0700
Files: .hgtags
Description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset b719adda35f8

213
215
Fixed the bibliography header bug (actually a bug with unnumbered chapters in the mainmatter).

Updated some documentation.

Fixed a pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

Small fix in mainmatter: only inserts a blank page when twoside.

Cleanup before conversion to hg. May be in an inconsistent state.

Fixed bug in documentation.

Added note about 1.58 fix.

Fixed bug with pagination after \frontmatter by adding \if@skipblankpage checks.

216
[svn r2116] Reverted default for ubcsample to openright.

changeset: 87:a13d4633653c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:04:20 2009 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r2115] Added several passes with pdflatex.

changeset: 86:e732b591e7e4
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:00:30 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2114] Added thanks.

changeset: 85:83588d5004e8
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 14:51:49 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2113] Added openrightblank option in conformance with UBC FoGS. Cleaned up pagination and cleared bi-page structure and usage. Use pdflatex to make documentation so hyperref works nicely.

changeset: 84:7c120b130e09
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.56
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 15 00:03:31 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2108] CVS -> SVN

changeset: 83:b96608566410
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:54:29 2009 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r2107] Remove data link too with realclean.

changeset: 82:60dcb783bc30
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:53:09 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2106] Okay, really Final version 1.56 passing checksum.

changeset: 81:60c0867ff8e4
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:52:14 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2105] Final version 1.56: Provided `noname` command to remove dependency on the dataset package.

changeset: 80:9725bfba394d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:28:57 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2104] Updated version to 1.56 and fixed some bugs on titlepage suggested by Darren including centering vertically, even-odd margins and updated date format.

changeset: 79:86c5d0d87f19
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.55
user: mforbes
date: Wed Dec 03 23:28:59 2008 -0800
files: data
description: [svn r2103] Added link to data.

217
- Added (no)appendix option.
- Reverted \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
- Added factor... macros to factor out formatting.
- Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.
- Modified \appendix commands to provide toc label and properly implement options.
- Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendices and appendicespage to satisfy HoG changes.

changeset: 61-62611a123456
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.42
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:42:40 2006 -0700
files: Manfile
description:
[svn r1269] Remove .txt notes from final distribution (realclean)

changeset: 60-619f7ee03271
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:37:55 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1268] -Fixed documentation error (first line).
- Added starred version \chaptermark* to add unnumbered chapters to running headers (like the bibliography).
- Cleaned up \chaptermark definitions in headings pagestyle.
- Removed sectionmark command from headings page style.
- Fixed some indentation errors and one changelog \cs error.
- Added \chaptermark* to \bibliography to fix bugs in running headers. (Prior to this, unnumbered bibliography would not produce a running header).

changeset: 59-59dbd23df400
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jun 18 13:20:43 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1211] Initial commit

changeset: 58-75b9d23d2d2c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Apr 11 10:45:29 2006 -0700
files: README ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1173] Changed some inline documentation.

changeset: 57-ce48940d401c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 19:03:25 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1156] Added (no)chapterreset option and made the ubcthesis default no.

changeset: 56-f23d0d29c61c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 18:25:40 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1157] Minor changes to ubc sample thesis.

changeset: 55-a06f3b0d5a5c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 16:11:30 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1156] Sync'd version numbers.

changeset: 54-0778821323f7
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 16:10:18 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1121] Fixed web references in the sample files.
Removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Detchy)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1117] Added mitsample as default target

changeset: 45:df68579eb7ab5
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:24:18 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1116] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 44:154b80ea1afa
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:19:34 2005 -0800
files: README ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1115] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 43:067a8d59eef8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.28
user: sforbes
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1114] Removed \chaptertoc and other redundant commands which should be
replaced by \chapter[] with an optional argument.

Removed \preface, \acknowledgements and \foreword commands: these
should simply be chapters.

Updated sample files to reflect these changes.

changeset: 42:067a8d59eef8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.26
user: sforbes
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1114] Fixed minor typesetting bug on first page.

changeset: 41:d9551af830b7
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Thu Apr 15 17:00:26 2005 -0700
files: README
description:
[svn r1113] Added comments about ubcthesis needing genthesis

changeset: 40:21d89be75c4d
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Thu Apr 15 17:18:43 2005 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1112] Fixed minor typesetting bug on first page.

changeset: 39:87e320e3c4d3
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Sun Mar 27 11:47:03 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1111] Modified to mention MIT

changeset: 38:87e320e3c4d3
branch: ubcthesis
contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given
within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably
tell me how to make this work properly!

changeset: 22:10afcd76b4a3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.13
user: mforbes
date: Wed Mar 27 18:30:39 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r222] Fixed bug with section heading interline spacing. Added some documentation.

changeset: 21:a365c0761495
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.12
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 18 21:45:52 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r206] Replaced magic numbers associated with list of tables and list of
figures with commands \toc?indent and \toc? labelswidth.

changeset: 20:0f363d9a63ad
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.11
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 12 17:38:22 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r202] Fixed a bug with starred sectioning commands. Also removed some magic
numbers.

changeset: 19:a10610a323ce
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.10
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 18 11:55:40 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r198] Fixed a bug with starred sectioning commands. Also removed some magic
numbers.

changeset: 18:a99617016b17
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 17 16:13:42 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r178] Some bug fixes. Committee spacing fixed, header overfulls warnings
removed (but not well) and a few numbering bugs fixed (section
numbering as well as the copyright year).

changeset: 17:11be002d5e81
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:19:02 2002 -0800
files: BUGS Makefile
description: [svn r176] README -> README bug.

changeset: 16:be50674b70de
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:09:11 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r175] Refined clean process.

changeset: 15:ab3e56c04d6f
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:07:04 2002 -0800
files: BUGS README
description: [svn r174] Update including bug list.

changeset: 14:3af3bb354bfa
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:06:52 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r173] Update including bug list.

225
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:56:18 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description:
[svn r173] Updated. Now Makefile is not distributed: make clean removes it and the CVS directory.

changeset: 13:7471ac533a83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:52:07 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r173] Included -f flag to suppress rm errors.

changeset: 12:87041d0b51fa
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:50:22 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r171] Included target clean.

changeset: 11:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:43:09 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description:
[svn r170] Initial commit of supporting files.

changeset: 10:06fda09497a4
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:42:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r169] Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed. (Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

changeset: 9:9641442af9c5
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 14 19:31:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r168] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

Added documentation and reorganized things.

Just about ready for release.

changeset: 8:1b85833a16ad
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r167] Added CVS Id and Log.

changeset: 7:9641442af9c5
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:36:10 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r166] Corrected minor typo.

changeset: 6:023fef390555
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:33:04 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r165] Modified the CVS version id into file and added a log to the end.

changeset: 5:df11b6b1132c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:52:03 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r162] Added CVS version id into file.

changeset: 4:8870b6b5ab3d7
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:30:53 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r161] Revised version. Many comments added and introduction etc. greatly expanded.
Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).
Problems with @ characters in .bib file fixed.

changeset: 3:40c582ec3889
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 09 08:33:07 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r118] There is a problem with the hyperref package. Taken out for now.
\partnamefont added to specify the font for the actual part name.
partheads option added to match chapterheads option.
Some modifications here and there: headers fixed so they align properly. Part heading modified to use specified fonts. Uppercase conversions done. \chaptertitle used for toc, listof, lot and bib for consistency.

changeset: 2:18b53a902e8b
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 02 15:32:49 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r109] Major revision. Now the document is based on the book class with modifications to make it look like a thesis. This should be considered the first real version as it is a drastic improvement over the other versions.

changeset: 1:43dbbaf7333c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Sep 27 17:20:51 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r108] Converted ubcthesis package to a .ins and a .dtx distribution. Now, running LaTeX on the .ins file will generate everything from the .dtx file.

changeset: 162:74e1f9dc2be9
branch: issue_14
tag: tip
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sun May 31 10:48:40 2015 -0700
files: tests/issue_14/fig.epsi tests/issue_14/genthesis.cls tests/issue_14/ubcsample_part_leaderlines.tex tests/issue_14/ubcthesis.cls
description:
BUG: Added demonstration of issue #14 table of contents bug.
- One page number extends too far to the right.
  * Appendices has leaders but no page number.

changeset: 161:0b361f5d02e9
branch: issue_14
tag: tip
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 18:11:13 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Remove extension for figures.

changeset: 160:4e26a3be02fc
branch: issue_14
tag: tip
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 18:00:55 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Remove extension for figures.
files:UBLICthesis.dtx
description:
BUG: Added dotted leaders to part line in toc for UBC thesis

changeset: 157:66bf0d802c3b
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 17:50:58 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
STY: removed trailing whitespace (emacs convention)

changeset: 156:f4c450ff6a3f
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 17:55:18 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Fixes issue 12. Move \backmatter to after appendices in sample theses.

files: latexmkrc
description:
Fixed bug with index generation command.

changeset: 155:20244be11cf3
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Feb 02 01:01:40 2012 -0800
files: latexmkrc
description:
Fixed index generation error.
Updated python to make pdf outputs from tex and lya. Included (added) pdf outputs to hg.
Remove README too.

changeset: 107:9a25f6a3b9eb
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:29 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags

description: Added tag v1.63 for changeset 0f54cd34e403

changeset: 106:0f54cd34e403
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.63
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:01 2010 -0800
files: Makefile

description: Fixed Makefile (tag) -> (tags)

changeset: 105:3465a7dafc32
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:14:41 2010 -0800
files: Makefile

description: Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform....

changeset: 104:22afb6f8aa6c
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:14:25 2010 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx

description: This fixes issue #1. Added *starmark commands and an options starmark/nostarmark pair to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters and sections to reset the headers. Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated version number and log file in Makefile.

changeset: 103:8e81c73f9c3
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:05:15 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags

description: Added tag v1.62 for changeset 0f709d76d131

changeset: 102:39c4d816ab20
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:05:01 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags

description: Removed tag v1.62 for changeset a7f7f66c5d31

changeset: 101:f6e81c73f9c3
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:05:15 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags

description: Removed tag v1.62 for changeset 39f68a8eb0d2

changeset: 100:39f68a8eb0d2
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:05:01 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags

description: Added tags as LaTeX versions.
description: [svn r2358] Added note about 1.58 fix.
changeset: 89:6d2d881e4bc0
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Sep 13 18:01:07 2009 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2357] Fixed bug with pagination after \frontmatter by adding \if@skipblankpage checks.
changeset: 88:5f1bc7b59261
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.57
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 16:46:05 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2356] Reverted default for \ubctemplate to openright.
changeset: 87:a1354833839c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:04:20 2009 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r2355] Added several passes with pdflatex.
changeset: 86:e7c85616e84d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 15:00:30 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2354] Added thanks.
changeset: 85:835b8dd304f8
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 30 14:51:49 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2353] Added openrightblank option in conformance with UBC FoGS. Cleaned up pagination and cleardoublepage structure and usage. Use pdflatex to make documentation so hyperref works nicely.
changeset: 84:7c120be616e9
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.56
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 15 00:03:31 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r2352] CVS -> SVN
changeset: 83:b96608566410
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 14 23:54:29 2009 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r2351] Final version 1.56: Provided \monthname command to remove dependency on the datetime package.
\@institutionaddress on titlepage as per new UBC Guidelines.
Also mention this in sample files.
- Updated references to remove warning.
description:
[svn r1443] Ignore files.
changeset: 63:969005d4204a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:41:46 2006 +0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1331] Fixed typo.
changeset: 62:beff47128770
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.43
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:29:58 2006 +0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1330] -Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
  -Added (no)appendicestoc options.
  -Reverted \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
  -Added \chaptermark\ldots macro to factor out formatting.
  -Modified \vspace\ macro to provide toc label and properly implement options.
  -Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendicestoc and appendixpage to satisfy FoGS changes.
changeset: 61:62df1a122dd2
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:42:40 2006 +0700
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1269] Remove .txt notes from final distribution (realclean)
changeset: 60:619f7ee03271
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:37:55 2006 +0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1268] -Fixed documentation error (first line).
  -Added starred version \chaptermark\* to add unnumbered chapters to running headers (like the bibliography).
  -Cleaned up \chaptermark definitions in headings page style.
  -Removed sectionmark command from headings page style.
  -Fixed some indentation errors and one changelog \cs error.
  -Added \chaptermark\* to thebibliography to fix bug in running headers. (Prior to this, unnumbered bibliography would not produce a running header).
changeset: 59:05edada964f2
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jun 18 13:20:43 2006 +0700
files: FoGS.txt ubcthesis.FoGSNotes.txt
description:
[svn r1211] Initial commit
changeset: 58:7fe910e9220c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Apr 11 15:48:39 2006 +0700
files: README ubcthesis.FoGSNotes.txt
description:
[svn r1173] Changed some inline documentation.
changeset: 57:ae4d991d0f1e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 19:03:25 2006 +0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1168] Added (no)chapternotereset option and made theubcthesis default no.
changeset: 56:fc230e66f7c3
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 18:25:40 2006 +0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1157] Minor changes to ubc sample thesis.

changeset: 55:ae0df805e8e3c
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.38
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 16:11:30 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1156] Sync'd version numbers

changeset: 54:ce78819b2fb7
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.36
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 16:10:18 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1155] Added longtable example to ubcsample.tex

changeset: 53:5e89b467e488
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 21:55:38 2006 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1154] Modified sample ubcthesis to include more package examples.
Makefile now has target realclean which gets rid of CVS stuff and a
simple clean which just gets rid of junk.

changeset: 52:cdade1d0cea6
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.35
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:41:51 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1153] Added comment error. (Don't use __ in comments!)

changeset: 51:8035ecf55b6d
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.34
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:38:44 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1152] Added "Parts" organization for documentation (removed "File" tag for
this)
Switched to \LaTeX\ so trailing space may be flexible.
Reversed class option sections. Namely, change ProcessOptions ->
ProcessOptions* so that defaults can be specified (the latter executes
options in the order called rather than the order defined.)
Added \*?\_*\ options for optional page number placement. This
involved mostly modification of the page style (ps@__) commands.
Added \no\*?\_*\*\ option for optional numbering of the bibliography.
Altered ubcsample.tex in response to FoGS requests.

changeset: 50:3b99cf26af2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.33
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 16 00:51:22 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1151] Substantial modifications of the ubcsample.tex file to bring it in
line with the FoGS requirements (thanks to Max Read and Joseph Tam for
these suggestions and changes).
Fixed typo \chapterbeforespace -> \chapterbeforeskip

changeset: 49:3a9c695c70b0
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.32
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 15 21:56:15 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1150] Added Chris Dutcyne's changes:
- Added tocatalitic and notocatalitic options.
- Added some float package compatibility.
- Added some header fixer.
Adjusted various spacing issues in headers.
Added various chapter headings explicitly to toc.
Fixed index placement with two-sided option.

Made ubc sample file default to lipt (as per FoGS request)

---

Changeset: 48:2bed6f6db2a
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.31
User: zforshe
Date: Wed Nov 16 18:30:04 2005 -0800
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: [svn r1122] Fixed bug in sample files.

Changeset: 47:5365f352fe3f
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.30
User: zforshe
Date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: [svn r1121] Fixed web references in the sample files.
Removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Datchy)

Changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.29
User: zforshe
Date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
Files: Makefile
Description: [svn r1117] Added mitsample as default target

Changeset: 45:d6f857eebab5
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.29
User: zforshe
Date: Tue Nov 15 23:24:18 2005 -0800
Files: README
Description: [svn r1116] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

Changeset: 44:154b80ea1afa
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.26
User: zforshe
Date: Tue Nov 15 23:17:52 2005 -0800
Files: README ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
Description: [svn r1115] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

Changeset: 43:067a8d59eef8
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.26
User: zforshe
Date: Tue Nov 15 23:12:52 2005 -0800
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: [svn r1114] Removed \chaptertoc and other redundant commands which should be replaced by \chapter{} with an optional argument.

Removed \preface, \acknowledgements and \foreword commands: these should simply be chapters.
Updated sample files to reflect these changes.

Changeset: 42:067a8d59eef8
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.26
User: zforshe
Date: Tue May 25 13:58:43 2005 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: [svn r1062] Partial commit.

Changeset: 41:154b80ea1afa
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.26
User: zforshe
Date: Fri Apr 15 17:50:26 2005 -0700
Files: README
Description: [svn r1035] Added comments about ubcthesis needing genthesis

---
changeset: 40:6a5dc49306ce
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Apr 15 17:19:43 2005 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1034] Fixed minor typesetting bug on first page.

changeset: 39:21d89be75c4d
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.21
user: mforbes
date: Sun Mar 27 11:47:03 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1021] Modified to mention MIT

changeset: 38:8785204c9d63
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Mar 27 11:33:58 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1020] Added \[hypertext\] option as default for hyperref.
MIT thesis page numbering okay now.
Default hangingcaptions option fixed (none).
Some major triplate cleanup.

changeset: 37:79db7dcc752e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Mar 08 14:18:36 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1008] Changes on the way to allowing for modular theses.

changeset: 36:63f0bbc73a50
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:56:11 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1003] Fixed minor restructuring change.

changeset: 35:b88516793c60
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:52:32 2005 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:

changeset: 34:a065bedf0480
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:46:29 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1001] Added new files to comments.

changeset: 33:28c9827d48ef
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:41:34 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1000] The new UBC Faculty of Graduate Studies rules forbid signatures from the
cover and change some of its content, most notably that the department
is now your program. Title page now reflects this, although macros are
retained. Thanks to Darren Peets for these changes.

This also represents the start of a restructuring to move the
university dependant information into smaller .cls files. The general
class will be called genthesis.cls and the university specific ones
ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.

changeset: 32:43b30100f27
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.20
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jun 24 12:42:59 2004 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
changeset: 31:425c3b9f1aeb
branch: ubuntuthesis
tag: v1.19
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:40:17 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r733] Documentation and web references updated.

changeset: 30:bc65d04b1c1f6a
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:32:45 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r732] Added commands for making index.

changeset: 29:89b0cf2ea110
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:20:09 2004 -0800
files: ubuntuthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r731] Added fix for header overflow bug as suggested by James P. Zibin.
Messed a bit with change log and index. Box indices are generated, but this should be cleaned up.

changeset: 28:9088b5cbe375
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 22:41:02 2002 -0800
files: TODO ubuntuthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r379] Modified To Do list...

changeset: 27:dc87f5d38d0e
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 21:44:11 2002 -0800
files: ubuntuthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r377] Resets the pagestyle to plain for the first page of a chapter. This is the default behaviour of the LaTeX classes and should be preserved for consistency: an option to change the behaviour should probably be provided...

changeset: 26:9e85b6eac90a
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Aug 27 11:43:17 2002 -0700
files: ubuntuthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r270] Some font fixes suggested by Darren concerning the titlepage.
changed includegraphics command to be compatible with graphics and graphics

changeset: 25:9f6c6c47377b
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jul 18 11:17:29 2002 -0700
files: TODO
description:
[svn r255] *** empty log message ***

changeset: 24:34029bee5606
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jul 04 22:05:55 2002 -0700
files: ubuntuthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r256] Some font fixes suggested by Darren concerning the titlepage.

changeset: 23:7f7f70d1c139
branch: ubuntuthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Apr 21 16:24:02 2002 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r229] Added linebreaks for version labels (so they look nicer in the LaTeX logs when viewed at standard width.)
Corrected various spelling mistakes.

Added ma,masc,meng options. Also modified the number of signatures used by these options.
Fixed references in Acknowledgements page. (Links were correct, labels were not.)

TITLEPAGE:
Some large modification on title page: including adding \faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others: i.e. \faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.
Many uppercase options added: uppersubtitle, upperdegreetitle etc.
Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably tell me how to make this work properly!

commits: 22:10afcbd7b4e3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.13
user: mforbes
date: Wed Mar 27 18:30:39 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r222] Fixed bug with section heading interline spacing. Added some documentation.

commit: 21:a363cd761695
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.12
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 18 21:45:52 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r206] Replaced magic numbers associated with list of tables and list of figures with commands \to?indent and \to?labelwidth.

commit: 20:d73dc59463ad
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.11
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 12 17:38:22 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r202] Fixed a bug with starred sectioning commands. Also removed some magic numbers.

commit: 19:e8160aa93ece
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.10
user: mforbes
date: Fri Jan 18 11:55:40 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r179] Fixed a bug with some options (negative were not properly declared).
Changed Forward -> Foreword

commit: 18:a98617016b17
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.09
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 17 16:13:42 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r176] Some bug fixes. Committee spacing fixed, header overfulls warnings removed (but not well) and a few numbering bugs fixed (section numbering as well as the copyright year).

commit: 17:83bd9622e8f1
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.08
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:19:02 2002 -0800
files: 
description:
[svn r176] README -> README bug.

243
Initial commit of supporting files.

Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed.
(Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

Added documentation and reorganized things.

Just about ready for release.
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:10 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r164] Corrected minor typo.

changeset: 6:023fef390555
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:34:04 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r163] Modified the CVS version id into file and added a log to the end.

changeset: 5:95f106b113c2
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:52:03 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r162] Added CVS version id into file.

changeset: 4:8679b85abd57
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:30:53 2002 -0800
files: TODO ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r161] Revised version. Many comments added and introduction etc. greatly expanded. Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).
Problems with @ characters in .bib file fixed.

changeset: 3:4c6e52ec8f89
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 09 08:33:07 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r118] There is a problem with the hyperref package. Taken out for now.
Except for above, \@toupper appears to work now.
\partnamefont added to specify the font for the actual part name.
\parthead option added to match chapterheaders option.
Some modifications here and there: headers fixed so they align properly. Part heading modified to use specified fonts. Uppercase conversions done. \chaptertoc used for toc, lof, lot and bib for consistency.

changeset: 2:18b53a902e8b
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 02 15:32:49 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r109] Major revision. Now the document is based on the book class with modifications to make it look like a thesis. This should be considered the first real version as it is a drastic improvement over the other versions.

changeset: 1:43dbbaf7333c
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Sep 27 17:20:51 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r108] Converted ubcthesis package to a .ins and a .dtx distribution. Now, running LaTeX on the .ins file will generate everything from the .dtx file.

changeset: 0:74e1f9dc2be9
branch: issue_14
user: mforbes
date: Wed Sep 19 16:49:57 2001 -0700
files: TODO fig.eps fig.fig
description:
[svn r107] Initial commit of UBC thesis class.

changeset: 162:74e1f9dc2be9
branch: issue_14
user: mforbes
date: Wed Sep 19 16:49:57 2001 -0700
files: TODO fig.eps fig.fig
description:
[svn r107] Initial commit of UBC thesis class.
BUG: Added demonstration of issue #14 table of contents bug.
- One page number extends too far to the right.
- Appendices has leaders but no page number.

changeset: 151:0a7b557e45d7
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sun May 31 10:48:40 2015 -0700
files: tests/issue_14/fig.epsi tests/issue_14/gentest.cls tests/issue_14/ubcsample_part_leaderlines.tex tests/issue_14/ubcthesis.cls
description: BUG: Added demonstration of issue #14 table of contents bug.
- One page number extends too far to the right.
- Appendices has leaders but no page number.

changeset: 150:4e26a3be02fc
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 18:11:13 2015 -0700
files: .hgtags
description: Remove extension for figures.

changeset: 149:b4df0b7f0f6f
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 18:00:55 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: BUG: Added dotted leaders to part line in toc for UBC thesis

changeset: 148:b4df0b7f0f6f
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Mar 26 17:55:18 2015 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: STY: removed trailing whitespace (emacs convention)

changeset: 147:d4c450ff6a3f
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Apr 07 00:59:07 2012 -0700
files: .hgtags
description: Added tag v1.71 for changeset b4d6c97c08af

changeset: 146:20244be11cf3
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Feb 02 01:01:40 2012 -0800
files: latexmkrc
description: Fixed bug with index generation command.

changeset: 145:1b17d55997f7
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Feb 02 00:58:37 2012 -0800
files: latexmkrc
description: Fixed index generation error.

changeset: 144:0df3e52f58e6
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Thu Feb 02 00:40:00 2012 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: Added a note about pdflatex not working with psfrag.
Simplified Makefile using latexmk.

Removed .ps dependency... pdf is ubiquitous now.
files: Makefile
description:
Don't remove hginfo.tex as this is needed to build documentation.
(This is removed by realclean.)

changeset: 119:e767e046e26b
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed May 05 15:29:17 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Added some notes about \appendixname{} and hyperref to sample files.
Make linktocpage a default hyperref option in the sample file.

changeset: 118:2567e694e23
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.64
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:55:41 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag v1.64 for changeset d011f85637f8

changeset: 117:d011f85637f8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.64
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:55:02 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Removed tag 1.64

changeset: 116:b4270c1a1239
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:49:49 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset b719adda55fe

changeset: 115:b719adda55fe
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:49:18 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 03709eebee47

changeset: 114:03709eebee47
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:44:06 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Added not about tocloft, but sticking with float.

changeset: 113:f0c29d19d878
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:43:51 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 4cfb190f5196

changeset: 112:4cfb190f5196
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:34 2010 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Updated version to 1.64

changeset: 111:fadc3f9cf243
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:16 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset ffba4ff323a6

changeset: 110:ffba4ff323a6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:06 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Updated version to 1.64

changeset: 109:ffba4ff323a6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:06 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 656a44f323a6

changeset: 108:656a44f323a6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:06 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Updated version to 1.64

changeset: 107:656a44f323a6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:06 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 70e70e6d55fe

changeset: 106:70e70e6d55fe
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Wed Apr 14 12:28:06 2010 -0700
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tag 1.64 for changeset 250
Updated checksum.

Uses pdscale to rotate landscape pages in pdf file.

Use pdflscape to rotate landscape pages in pdf file.

Remove README too.

Added tag v1.63 for changeset 0f54cd34e403

Fixed Makefile (tag) -> (tags)

Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform....

Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform....

Added *starmark commands and an optional starmark/nostarmark pair
to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters
and sections to reset the headers.

Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated
version number and log file in Makefile.

This fixes issue #1.

Added *starmark commands and an optional starmark/nostarmark pair
to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters
and sections to reset the headers.

Removal of SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated
version number and log file in Makefile.

This fixes issue #1.

Added *starmark commands and an optional starmark/nostarmark pair
to provide a backwards compatible way of allowing starred chapters
and sections to reset the headers.

Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated
version number and log file in Makefile.
Added tag v1.62 for changeset 0f709d76d131

changeset: 100:364d816a3d0
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:05:01 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description:
Removed tag v1.62

changeset: 99:b7ea33af71e6
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 01:38:12 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description:
Added tags as LaTeX versions.

changeset: 98:3b277fe5d131
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.62
user: mforbes
date: Thu Mar 11 20:29:05 2010 -0800
files: tests/ubcsample1.tex ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2583] Fixed the bibliography header bug (actually a bug with unnumbered chapters in the mainmatter).

changeset: 97:0f709d76d131
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.61
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 05 11:32:48 2010 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2548] Fixed a pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

changeset: 96:349988f63d41
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.60
user: mforbes
date: Thu Nov 19 11:28:47 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2464] Fixed bug with frontmatter that inserted a blank page before title. Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.

changeset: 95:b6d5c7b49482
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.59
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 15:51:42 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2462] Fixed bug with frontmatter that inserted a blank page before title. Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.

changeset: 92:8440e60a25bf
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.58
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 15:08:22 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2460] Fixed a pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

changeset: 91:faa111fa4a43
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.57
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 15:08:22 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2458] Fixed everthing bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

changeset: 90:6bdf5ca4e862
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.56
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 15:08:22 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2456] Fixed bug with pagination that inserted a blank page before title. Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.

changeset: 89:b0e3e4e22a0b
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.55
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 15:08:22 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2454] Fixed bug with pagination that inserted a blank page before title. Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.

252
- Added a comment for \advisor* commands in ubc-sample because they have no effect.
- Changed Okanagan and Vancouver text to drop the Canada.

changeset: 73:db39661556d6
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.61
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:24:48 2008 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
- Added instructions to make pdf files.

changeset: 72:44cea114d613
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.60
user: mforbes
date: Thu Feb 21 17:16:40 2008 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Included \institutionaddress on titlepage as per new UBC Guidelines.
- Also mention this in sample files.
- Updated references to remove warning.

changeset: 71:8f0b3109a4d7
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.59
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:40:32 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Fixed \maketitle command was omitted.

changeset: 70:a4611e2111c0
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.58
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:37:56 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Fixed \begin{onecolumn} as in a conditional and hence unmatched
  by \end{onecolumn} in the abstract. This showed itself when the
  \maketitle command was omitted.

changeset: 69:6a9f9d91239c
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.57
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:30:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Fixed \topmargin bug that was preventing this from being modified.

changeset: 68:709c2e17c211
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.56
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 15:03:35 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Added thanks.

changeset: 67:3c3b49677a76
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.55
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 15:00:13 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Fixed \maketitle command was omitted.

changeset: 66:8d330739f78a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.54
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 15:00:13 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Added \maketitle command was omitted.

changeset: 65:6d350739f78a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.53
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 20 15:00:13 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
- Added sectionsub option to facilitate bibliographies in chapters for
  manuscript based theses.
changeset: 65:877d6a893b81
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.45
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 16 22:02:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1453] Added counter \oldsecnumdepth to allow \frontmatter and \mainmatter
to manipulate and reset this to suppress numberings in the
frontmatter. This is needed so that packages like fancyhdr.sty work
properly.

changeset: 64:012986c8baa6
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.44
user: mforbes
date: Wed Jan 10 17:45:05 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1443] Ignore files.

changeset: 63:96b9065d204a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:41:46 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1331] Fixed typo.

changeset: 62:beff47128770
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.43
user: mforbes
date: Sun Oct 22 01:29:58 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1330] -Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added \appendixlocator options.
-Reverted \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for
compatibility with other packages.
-Added \footnotetext... macro to factor out formatting.
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly
implement options.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendicisastc and
appendixpage to satisfy FoGS changes.

changeset: 61:62df1a122dd2
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.42
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:42:40 2006 -0700
files: Makefile

description:
[svn r1269] Remove .txt notes from final distribution (realclean)

changeset: 60:81f7f2e60271
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sat Sep 02 23:37:55 2006 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1268] -Fixed documentation error (first line).
-Added starred version \chaptermark* to add unnumbered chapters to
running headers (like the bibliography).
-Cleaned up \chaptermark definitions in headings pagestyle.
-Removed sectionmark command from headings page style
-Fixed some indentation errors and one changing \cs error.
-Added \chaptermark* to \thebibliography to fix bug in running
headers. (Prior to this, and unnumbered bibliography would not
produce a running header).

changeset: 59:05edada964f2
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.41
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 18 13:20:43 2006 -0700
files: FuG2.txt ubcthesis.FuG2Notes.txt
description:
[svn r121] Initial commit

changeset: 58:75e91d62220c
branch: ubcthesis

tagged as v1.40
user: mforbes
file: README ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1173] Changed some inline documentation.

changeset: 57:ae409910df1e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 19:03:25 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1158] Added (no)chapternotereset option and made the ubcthesis default no.

changeset: 56:fc21d0e967c3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.39
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 18:25:40 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1157] Minor changes to ubc sample thesis.

changeset: 55:a0fd0c95fe3c
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.38
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 16:11:30 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1156] Sync'd version numbers.

changeset: 54:8781285ca72a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.37
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 22 16:10:18 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1155] Added longtable example to ubcsample.tex

changeset: 53:5a0dfc49b3a3
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 21:55:28 2006 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1154] Modified sample ubcthesis to include more package examples. Makefile now has target realclean which gets rid of CVS stuff and a simple clean which just gets rid of junk.

changeset: 52:ca86b10b3ead
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.36
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 21:51:51 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1153] Modified comment error. (Don't use __ in comments!)

changeset: 51:803fa1c05d84
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.35
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 20 15:38:44 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1152] Added "Parts" organization for documentation (removed "File" tag for this).
Switched to LaTeX so trailing spaces may be flexible.
Revised class option sections. Namely, change ProcessOptions ->
  ProcessOptions* so that defaults can be specified (the latter executes
  options in the order called rather than the order defined.)
Added pagenum__ options for optional page number placement. This
  involved mostly modification of the page style (ps@__) commands.
Added (no)titleoptions option for optional numbering of the bibliography.
Altered ubcsample.tex in response to FoGS requests.

changeset: 50:3b99cf26af2a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
file: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r1151] Added "Parts" organization for documentation (removed "File" tag for this).
Switched to LaTeX so trailing spaces may be flexible.
Revised class option sections. Namely, change ProcessOptions ->
  ProcessOptions* so that defaults can be specified (the latter executes
  options in the order called rather than the order defined.)
Added pagenum__ options for optional page number placement. This
  involved mostly modification of the page style (ps@__) commands.
Added (no)titleoptions option for optional numbering of the bibliography.
Altered ubcsample.tex in response to FoGS requests.
date: Thu Feb 16 00:51:22 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1149] Substantial modifications of the ubcsample.tex file to bring it in
line with the FoGS requirements (thanks to Max Read and Joseph Tam for
these suggestions and changes).
Fixed typo \chapterbeforespace \chapterbeforeskip

changeset: 49:39efb6018e11
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.32
user: sforbes
date: Wed Feb 15 21:56:15 2006 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1148] Added Chris Dutchyn's changes:
Added tocitalic and notocitalic options.
Added some float package compatibility.
Added some header fixes.
Adjusted various spacing issues in headers.
Added various chapter headings explicitly to toc.
Fixed index placement with two-sided option.
Made ubc sample file default to 11pt (as per FoGS request)

changeset: 48:2bb6c668a0a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.31
user: sforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:20:04 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1122] Fixed bug in sample files.

changeset: 47:5365f352fe3f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: sforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
Removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Dutchy)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1117] Added mitsample as default target

changeset: 45:d6f857eebab5
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:24:18 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1116] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 44:154b0f01aaf
branch: ubcthesis
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:12:52 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1115] Updated email anc website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 43:4bb7f7273007
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.28
user: sforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:12:52 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1114] Removed \chaptertoc and other redundant commands which should be
replaced by \chapter{} with an optional argument.
Removed \preface, \acknowledgements and \foreword commands; these
should simply be chapters.
Updated sample files to reflect these changes.
The new UBC Faculty of Graduate Studies rules forbid signatures from the cover and change some of its content, most notably that the department is now your program. Title page now reflects this, although macros are retained. Thanks to Darren Peets for these changes.

This also represents the start of a restructuring to move the university dependent information into smaller .cls files. The general class will be called genthesis.cls and the university specific ones ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.

Documentation and web references updated.

Added sample.ps as a target (and sample.dvi)

Added commands for making index.

Added fix for header overflow bug as suggested by James P. Zibin. Messed a bit with change log and index. New indices are generated, but this should be cleaned up.

Modified To Do list...

Resets the pagestyle to plain for the first page of a chapter. This is the default behaviour of the LaTeX classes and should be preserved for consistency: an option to change the behaviour should probably be provided...
TITLEPAGE:
Some large modification on title page: including adding \faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now dependent on others: \i.e. \faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.

Many uppercase options added: uppersubtitle, upperdegreetitle etc.

Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \Hypertarget: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably tell me how to make this work properly!
changeset: 18:a99617016b17
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 17 16:13:42 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r178] Some bug fixes. Committee spacing fixed, header overfulls warnings removed (but not well) and a few numbering bugs fixed (section numbering as well as the copyright year).

changeset: 17:83d82b2e6f61
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:19:02 2002 -0800
files: README
description: [svn r176] README -> README bug.

changeset: 16:bd9e7487fde
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:09:11 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r175] Refined clean process.

changeset: 15:6b33d3d3d8f
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:07:04 2002 -0800
files: README
description: [svn r174] Update including bug list.

changeset: 14:a70c00834e5a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:56:18 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description: [svn r173] Updated. Now Makefile is not distributed: make clean removes it and the CVS directory.

changeset: 13:7471ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:52:07 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r172] Included -f flag to suppress rm errors.

changeset: 12:870491dcb15a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:50:22 2002 -0800
files: Makefile
description: [svn r171] Included target clean.

changeset: 11:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:43:09 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README
description: [svn r170] Initial commit of supporting files.

changeset: 10:e0fadf947d7d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:42:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r169] Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed. (Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).

changeset: 9:3b3e5e164f17
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 14 19:31:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r168] Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

Added documentation and reorganized things.

Just about ready for release.

changeset: 8:1b85833a3f0d
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r165] Added CVS Id and Log.

changeset: 7:964144a0d365
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:10 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r164] Corrected minor typo.

changeset: 6:023fef390555
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:33:04 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r163] Modified the CVS version id into file and added a log to the end.

changeset: 5:95f106b113c2
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:52:03 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r162] Added CVS version id into file.

changeset: 4:8679b85abd57
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 17:30:53 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r161] Revised version. Many comments added and introduction etc. greatly expanded.

Conflict with natbib fixed (though probably not optimally).

Problems with @ characters in .bib file fixed.

changeset: 3:4c6e52ec8f89
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 09 08:33:07 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description: [svn r118] There is a problem with the hyperref package. Taken out for now.

Except for above, \toupper appears to work now.

\partnamefont added to specify the font for the actual part name.

\partheads option added to match chapterheads option.

Some modifications here and there: headers fixed so they align properly. Part heading modified to use specified fonts. Uppercase conversions done. \chaptertoc used for toc, lof, lot and bib for consistency.

changeset: 2:1b85833a3f0b
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Oct 02 15:32:49 2001 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description: [svn r119] Major revision. Now the document is based on the book class with modifications to make it look like a thesis. This should be considered the first real version as it is a drastic improvement over the other versions.

263
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:29 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags
description: 
Added tag v1.63 for changeset 0f54cd34e403

changeset: 106:0f54cd34e403
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.63
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:23:01 2010 -0800
files: Makefile
description: 
Fixed Makefile {tag} -> {tags}

changeset: 105:3465a7dafc32
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 05:14:41 2010 -0800
files: .hgtags

description: 
Fixed bug with quoting in Makefile that was not cross platform....

changeset: 103:22afb6f8aa6c
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:38:17 2010 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx

description: 
This fixes issue #1.

270

changeset: 99:3ba8d0a1e280
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 04:04:21 2010 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: 
Added tags as LaTeX versions.

changeset: 98:5b77f3f223ac
branch: ubcthesis
user: Michael McNeil Forbes <mforbes@physics.ubc.ca>
date: Sat Mar 13 01:41:16 2010 -0800
files: Makefile tests/ubcsample1.tex

description: 
Removed SVN references etc. and add HG references as well as a generated
version number and log file in Makefile.
Possibly fixed bibliography header bug.
Added hgid tagging in Makefile
Added make realclean which gets rid of all non-tracked files and make distclean
which makes the distribution suitable for publishing. (An hg revert will be
needed to restore these files.)
Cleared out some stuff like keyword expansion and change logs.
Still need to update version info before release.

changeset: 97:0270f8f6d4f3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.42
user: mforbes
date: Thu Mar 11 20:29:05 2010 -0800
files: tests/ubcsample1.tex ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2583] Fixed the bibliography header bug (actually a bug with unnumbered
chapters in the mainmatter).

changeset: 96:3499086f34b1
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.41
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 06 11:32:48 2010 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2548] Fixed the bibliography header bug (actually a bug with unnumbered
chapters in the mainmatter).

changeset: 95:2894dac34f12
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.40
user: mforbes
date: Thu Nov 19 11:28:47 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2464] Fixed a pagination bug (missing clearpage before setting arabic numerals).

changeset: 94:fa0f11fa6a43
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.39
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 16:08:22 2009 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2463] Small fix in mainmatter: only inserts a blank page when twoside.

changeset: 93:6fd2b7b84862
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.38
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 18 15:51:42 2009 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2462] Fixed bug with frontmatter that inserted a blank page before title.
Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.

changeset: 92:84d2a8d2d35f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.37
user: mforbes
date: Sun Sep 21 21:39:41 2009 -0700
files: tests/data tests/genthesis.cls tests/mitthesis.cls tests/ubcsample1.tex tests/ubcthesis.cls
description:
[svn r2366] Cleanup before conversion to hg. May be in an inconsistent state.

changeset: 91:51873b90d439
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.36
user: mforbes
date: Sun Sep 13 18:14:01 2009 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r2359] Fixed bug in documentation.

changeset: 90:5bf1e008f5a4
branch: ubcthesis
tag: r1.35
user: mforbes
date: Sun Sep 13 18:06:49 2009 -0700
files: README
description:
[svn r2358] Added note about 1.58 fix.

changeset: 89:62fd660eb9d8
branch: ubcthesis
Updated version to 1.56 and fixed some bugs on title page suggested by Darren including centering vertically, even-odd margins and updated date format.

Changeset: 79:86c3d0b871f9
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.55
User: mforbes
Date: Wed Dec 03 20:28:59 2008 -0800
Files: data
Description: Added link to data.

Changeset: 78:c0ffaa4b6c05
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Wed Dec 03 20:28:39 2008 -0800
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: Added a missing brace!

Changeset: 77:29b1cc756451
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Sat Aug 09 17:54:10 2008 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: Removed note about natbib bug.

Changeset: 76:42c59752b999
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Sat Aug 09 17:51:32 2008 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: Simplified marking instructions (removed \chaptermark etc.) to keep with standard LaTeX.
- Added better support for natbib package, including fixing bug with numbering not being reset between sections of a manuscript based thesis.

Changeset: 75:f75b4ff42a2a
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.52
User: mforbes
Date: Mon May 19 17:58:46 2008 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: Unified chaptermark commands: only @chaptermark(No)Star should be modified. This fixes a runningheader bug that caused an extra \bibname to be displayed.

Changeset: 74:c05e55371f2d
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.51
User: mforbes
Date: Mon May 19 17:53:17 2008 -0700
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: Added a comment for \advisor commands in ubcsample because they have no effect.
- Changed Okanagan and Vancouver text to drop the Canada.

Changeset: 73:7b965513ac2e
Branch: ubcthesis
Tag: v1.50
User: mforbes
Date: Thu Feb 21 17:24:48 2008 -0800
Files: Makefile
Description: Added instructions to make pdf files.

Changeset: 72:64a11a1d4613
Branch: ubcthesis
User: mforbes
Date: Thu Feb 21 17:18:40 2008 -0800
Files: ubcthesis.dtx
Description: Included \institutions address on title page as per new UBC Guidelines. Also mention this in sample files.
- Updated reference to remove warning.

Changeset: 71:9d68103aa46f
description: [svn r1502] Fixed pagenumTR header bug.
changeset: 70:a4612d11c0
branch: ubcthesis
tag: rl.49
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:49:52 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r1501] Fixed \@startonecolumn that was in a conditional and hence unmatched by the \@endonecolumn in the abstract. This showed itself when the \maketitlecommand was omitted.
changeset: 69:6a9f9d91239c
branch: ubcthesis
tag: rl.48
user: mforbes
date: Mon Feb 26 00:30:42 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r1500] Fixed topmargin bug that was preventing this from being modified.
changeset: 68:709c2e17c211
branch: ubcthesis
tag: rl.47
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 26 00:33:35 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r1499] Added thanks.
changeset: 67:8d330739f78a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: rl.46
user: mforbes
date: Tue Feb 26 15:58:13 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r1456] Added sectionbib option to facilitate bibliographies in chapters for manuscript based theses.
changeset: 65:8776d6979d78a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: rl.45
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 22 15:48:03 2007 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description: [svn r1443] Ignore files.
changeset: 63:96b9065d204a
branch: ubcthesis
Fixed typo.

-added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added (noappendixes) options.
-Hovered \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
-Added factor... acronym to factor out formatting.
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendices and appendicestoc to satisfy FoGS changes.

-Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added (noappendixes) options.
-Hovered \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
-Added factor... acronym to factor out formatting.
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendices and appendicestoc to satisfy FoGS changes.

-Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added (noappendixes) options.
-Hovered \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
-Added factor... acronym to factor out formatting.
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendices and appendicestoc to satisfy FoGS changes.

-Added more documentation and reorganized some of it.
-Added (noappendixes) options.
-Hovered \chapter etc. commands to default behaviour for compatibility with other packages.
-Added factor... acronym to factor out formatting.
-Modified \appendix command to provide toc label and properly implement options.
-Changed default options for ubcthesis to include appendices and appendicestoc to satisfy FoGS changes.
changeset: 48:2bed6f68db2a
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.31
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:20:04 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1122] Fixed bug in sample files.

changeset: 47:5365a3b2fa3f
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.30
user: mforbes
date: Wed Nov 16 18:15:29 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1121] Fixed web references in the sample files.
Removed number from \thebibliography (Thanks to Christopher Dutchy)

changeset: 46:33fe03471df3
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.29
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:31:31 2005 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r1117] Added mitsample as a default target

changeset: 45:d6f857eebab5
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:24:18 2005 -0800
files: README
description:
[svn r1116] Updated email and website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 44:154b80ea1afa
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:19:34 2005 -0800
files: README ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins
description:
[svn r1115] Updated email and website info to alum.mit.edu

changeset: 43:4bbf77df7907
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.28
user: mforbes
date: Tue Nov 15 23:12:52 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1114] Removed \chaptertoc and other redundant commands which should be replaced by \chapter{} with an optional argument.
Removed \preface, \acknowledgements and \foreword commands: these should simply be chapters.
Updated sample files to reflect these changes.

changeset: 42:067a8d59eef8
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.26
user: mforbes
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1108] Partial commit.

changeset: 41:49551af830b7
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Apr 15 17:10:26 2005 -0700
files: README
description:
[svn r1105] Added comments about ubcthesis needing genthesis

changeset: 40:4a6df493a0c8
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Fri Apr 15 17:10:43 2005 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r1102] Added comments about ubcthesis needing genthesis
[svn r1034] Fixed minor typesetting bug on first page.

changeset: 39:3108b9e75c4d
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.21
user: mforbes
date: Sun Mar 27 11:47:03 2005 -0800
files: README

description:
[svn r1034] Modified to mention MIT

changeset: 38:8785204c9d63
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Mar 27 11:33:58 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins

description:
[svn r1021] Added \[hypertex\] option as default for hyperref. MIT thesis page numbering okay now.
Default hangingcaptions option fixed (none).

Some major titlepage cleanup.

changeset: 37:79db7dcc752e
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Mar 08 14:18:36 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
[svn r1008] Changes on the way to allowing for modular theses.

changeset: 36:63f0bbc73a50
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:56:11 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
[svn r1003] Fixed minor restructuring change.

changeset: 35:b88516793c60
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:52:32 2005 -0800
files: Makefile ubcthesis.dtx

description:

changeset: 34:a065bedf0480
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:46:29 2005 -0800
files: README

description:
[svn r1001] Added new files to comments.

changeset: 33:d8c09c27d0ef
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 09 18:41:34 2005 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx ubcthesis.ins

description:
[svn r1000] The new UBC Faculty of Graduate Studies rules forbid signatures from the cover and change some of its content, most notably that the department is now your program. Title page now reflects this, although macros are retained. Thanks to Darren Peets for these changes.

This also represents the start of a restructuring to move the university dependent information into smaller .cls files. The general class will be called genthesis.cls and the university specific ones ubcthesis.cls, mitthesis.cls etc.

changeset: 32:43db3d100f27
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jun 24 12:42:59 2004 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
[svn r833] Documentation and web references updated.

changeset: 31:425c2dcf0acb
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.19
user: mforbes
date: Thu Jan 24 12:42:59 2004 -0700
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
[svn r833] Documentation and web references updated.
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:40:17 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description:
[svn r733] Added sample.ps as a target (and sample.dvi)

changeset: 30:5e5a4b14696a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:32:45 2004 -0800
files: Makefile
description: 
[svn r732] Added commands for making index.

changeset: 29:89b0cf2ea110
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Wed Feb 04 15:20:09 2004 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx
description:
[svn r731] Added fix for header overflow bug as suggested by James P. Zibin.
Messed a bit with change log and index. Now indices are generated, but this should be cleaned up.

changeset: 28:9088b5cbe375
branch: ubcthesis
tag: v1.18
user: mforbes
date: Sat Dec 14 22:41:02 2002 -0800
files: TODO ubcthesis.dtx
description: 
[svn r379] Modified To Do list...
Added ma, marc, meng options. Also modified the number of signatures used by these options.

Fixed references in Acknowledgements page. (Links were correct, labels were not.)

**TITLEPAGE**

Some large modification on title page: including adding \faculty command and various font options. Some fonts now depend on others: i.e. \faculty font is initially set to \titlepagefont.

Many uppercase options added: uppersubtitle, upperdegreetitle etc.

Titlepage supports a graphic logo (supplied by user). This contribution was from Darren Peets.

Fixed bug with use of \MakeUppercase: The argument must be given within the \if, otherwise it does not work. A TeX guru could probably tell me how to make this work properly!
description:
svn r175 Refined clean process.
changeset: 15:eb2635cd96fb
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 12:07:04 2002 -0800
files: BUGS README

description:
svn r174 Updated including bug list.
changeset: 14:a70c00834e5a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:56:18 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README

description:
svn r173 Updated. Now Makefile is not distributed: make clean removes it and the CVS directory.
changeset: 13:7471ec933b83
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:52:07 2002 -0800
files: Makefile

description:
svn r172 Included -f flag to suppress rm errors.
changeset: 12:870491dcb15a
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:50:22 2002 -0800
files: Makefile

description:
svn r171 Included target clean:
changeset: 11:310c10c41d77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:43:09 2002 -0800
files: Makefile README

description:
svn r170 Initial commit of supporting files.
changeset: 10:80f9a79c0a77
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Tue Jan 15 11:42:31 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins

description:
svn r169 Removed generation of documentation driver as this is never needed.  
(Simply processing the dtx file with latex has the same effect).
changeset: 9:28cc21eb4197
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Mon Jan 14 19:31:18 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
svn r168 Corrected minor typo.
changeset: 8:1b85833a16ad
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:35 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.ins

description:
svn r167 Added documentation and reorganized things.
Just about ready for release.
changeset: 7:9641442f9474
branch: ubcthesis
user: mforbes
date: Sun Jan 13 18:38:10 2002 -0800
files: ubcthesis.dtx

description:
svn r166 Fixed bug with hyperref package by converting to uppercase BEFORE adding headings to the toc file.

281
Change History

v1.00d

General: Added use of\NeedsTeXFormat ......... 57
Made equation and eqnarray environments in the fleqn option
up to date with latex.dtx .... 57
removes \@in, made option
makeindex a synonym for option makeidx ............... 57
removed \@minus, \@plus,
\@settopoint, \@setfontsize;
it is now in the kernel .... 57
Replaced \bf with \bfseries;
\rm with \rmfamily ......... 57

v1.00f

General: Made all lines shorter than
72 characters ............... 57
Use class ltxdoc document class 23
\bf: Macro added ............... 118
\it: Macro added ............... 119
\rm: Macro added ............... 118
\sc: Macro added ............... 119
\sf: Macro added ............... 118
\textit: Macro added ............ 119
\tt: Macro added ............... 118
\cal: Macro added ............... 119
\listoffigures: Moved the setting
of \@restonucolfalse ........ 123
\listoftables: Moved the setting
of \@restonucolfalse ........ 123
\mit: Macro added ............... 119
\tableofcontents: Moved the setting
of \@restonucolfalse . 120
executivpaper: Removed typo,
A4 is not 279 mm high ........ 67

v1.00g

General: Distinguished between compatibility and 'normal'
mode for the font changing commands ............... 118
Made change in eqnarray for the fleqn option, as suggested by
Rainer ....................... 57
\cal: Macro added ............... 119
\listoffigures: Moved the setting
of \@restonucolfalse ....... 123
\listoftables: Moved the setting
of \@restonucolfalse ........ 123
\mit: Macro added ............... 119
\tableofcontents: Moved the setting
of \@restonucolfalse . 120
executivpaper: Removed typo,
A4 is not 279 mm high ........ 67

v1.00i

Made the definitions of the font- and size-changing commands use \renew rather than
\new. Defined the float parameters with \renewcommand
rather than \newcommand. Corrected some typos in the fleqn option. Replaced two occurrences of \@secpenalty by
\@seccntpenalty. ASAJ ....... 57
These are now defined in the kernel, so use \renewcommand.
Compatibility mode defines \renewcommand to do nothing, so we don't need to check
for compatibility mode any more ............... 118
\bottomfraction: Replaced
\renewcommand with \renewcommand
ASAJ ....................... 81
\dblfloatpagefraction: Replaced
\renewcommand with \renewcommand
ASAJ ....................... 81
\dbltopfraction: Replaced
\renewcommand with \renewcommand
ASAJ ....................... 81
\textfraction: Replaced
\renewcommand with \renewcommand
ASAJ ....................... 81
\topfraction: Replaced \renewcommand
with \renewcommand. ASAJ . 81

v1.00j

thebibliography: Corrected definition of thebibliography for article
....................... 124

v1.00h

General: Added \normalfont back
in the definitions of \rm etc. as
this should be the default behaviour ............... 118
Added \ProvidesFile to size
files ....................... 57
Use \cmd in change entries \ldots 57

v1.00k
General: Removed some typos/bugs \ldots \ldots \ldots 57
\chapter: Added \hbox around dots. \ldots \ldots \ldots 122

v1.00l
General: add the extension to the names of the files \ldots \ldots \ldots 57
Changed version numbering; moved leqno and fleqn options to an external file. \ldots \ldots \ldots 57
\chapter: Don’t reset to \rmfamily \ldots \ldots \ldots 122

v1.00m
\labelwidth: Use em instead of pt to remain compatible with old styles \ldots \ldots \ldots 111
\leftmarginvi: Use em instead of pt to remain compatible with old styles \ldots \ldots \ldots 110
\parindent: \parindent should be different, depending on the pointsize \ldots \ldots \ldots 80

v1.00n
General: Removed code for makeidx option and made it a separate package; removed use of \setlength from list parameters. \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.00o
General: Small documentation changes \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.00q
General: Small documentation changes \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.00r
General: Moved driver code in order not to need a separate driver. 23

v1.01a
\endonecolumn: New algorithm for \marginparwidth \ldots \ldots \ldots 60
New algorithm for \oddsidemargin \ldots \ldots \ldots 60
\maketitle: Use \makefnmark to generate footnote markers. 127
General: Removed \texttt{messages} \ldots \ldots \ldots 57
\brokenpenalty: Show correct default which is 100 \ldots \ldots \ldots 80

v1.01f
General: Inserted forgotten line break \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.02a
General: Added openright option. (LL) \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.02b
General: Added the \ldots matter commands. (LL) \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.02d
General: Checked the file for long lines and wrapped them when necessary; made a slight implementation modification to the openright and openany options. 57

v1.02e
General: \renewfontswitch \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots \ldots 118

v1.02g
\sc: Added warning if used in math mode \ldots \ldots \ldots 119
\sl: Added warning if used in math mode \ldots \ldots \ldots 119

v1.02i
General: Use \LaTeX instead of \LaTeX2e in messages \ldots \ldots \ldots 57
\chapter: Don’t print a toc line when the tocdepth counter is less than 0 \ldots \ldots \ldots 121
\part: Don’t print a toc line when the tocdepth counter is less than -1 \ldots \ldots \ldots 120

v1.02j
General: Removed the use of \fileversion c.s. \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.02k
\descriptionlabel: Inserted \normalfont \ldots \ldots \ldots 112
\labelitemii: Inserted \normalfont \ldots \ldots \ldots 112

v1.02l
General: changed some \changes entries \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.02m
General: Forgot a few entries \ldots \ldots \ldots 57

v1.02o
General: Changed file information 57
v1.02p
General: Moved identification and
driver to the front of the file . . . 57

v1.02q
\@makecaption: Use \sbox\@tempboxa
instead of \setbox\@tempboxa\hbox
to make this colour safe . . . . 118

v1.02t
General: Refrased a few sentences
to prevent overfull hboxes . . . 57

v1.02v
\dotsep: Changed documentation
from > or = to ≥ . . . . . . . . . . 120
\makechapterhead: Added
\interlinepenalty\@M to prevent
a page break in the middle
of a title . . . . . . . . . . . . . 107
Added a \nobreak to prevent a
page break between the chapter
number and the chapter title 106
\makeschapterhead: Added
\interlinepenalty\@M to prevent
a page break in the middle
of a title . . . . . . . . . . . . . 107
General: Made the oneside option
work for the book class . . . . . 57
removed typo . . . . . . . . . . . . 130
\if@mainmatter: Moved the allocation of \if@mainmatter here . 62

v1.02w
General: Use \newcommand* . . . . 24
Use \newcommand* for commands
with arguments . . . . . . . . . . . 57
\mit: Now define \cal and \mit using \DeclareRobustCommand* . . 119

v1.02x
\makecaption: Due to a change in
the way floats are handled we
need to set the \if@minipage
switch to false . . . . . . . . . . 118

v1.02y
\descriptionlabel: made com-
mand short . . . . . . . . . . . . . 112
\endonecolumn: Also take
\marginparsep into account
here . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 60
General: Always use \cs in
\changes entries . . . . . . . . . . 57
\thebibliography: added a missing
percent character . . . . . . . . 124

v1.03a
General: Replaced all \hbox to by
\hb@xt . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 57
\footnoterule: use \@width . . . . 127
\thebibliography: Added missing
braces in definition of thebibli-
ography environment . . . . . . 124
\l@chapter: Added missing
braces around argument to
\addpenalty . . . . . . . . . . . . . 120
\l@part: Added missing
braces around argument to
\addpenalty . . . . . . . . . . . . . 120
\makechapterhead: replace
\reset@font with \normalfont
\makeschapterhead: replace \reset@font with
\normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . 106
\part: replace \reset@font with
\normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . 103
\part: replace \reset@font with
\normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . 103
\section: replace \reset@font
with \normalfont . . . . . . . . . . 108
\makechapterhead: replace braces
by \normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . . 57
\makechapterhead: replace braces
by \normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . . 57
\subsubitem: Corrected error in
definition of \@idxitem . . . . 126

v1.03d
\@makechapterhead: replace
\reset@font with \normalfont
\makeschapterhead: replace \reset@font with
\normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . 106
\makechapterhead: replace
\reset@font with \normalfont
\part: replace \reset@font with
\normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . 103
\part: replace \reset@font with
\normalfont . . . . . . . . . . . . 103
\section: replace \reset@font
with \normalfont . . . . . . . . . . 108
\endpart: move docstrip guard to
avoid defining \endpart in ar-
ticle . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 104
\makechapterhead: replace braces
by \space . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 106
\part: add missing percent . . . . 103

v1.03g
\@endonecolumn: Also take
\marginparsep into account
here . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 60

v1.03h
General: Split up to save save stack
/1742 . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 128

v1.03i
General: Moved code for generic
class options leqno and fleqn to
kernel file . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 130

v1.03j
\endpart: move docstrip guard to
avoid defining \endpart in ar-
ticle . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 104
\makechapterhead: replace braces
by \space . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 106
\part: add missing percent . . . . 103

285
v1.04d
\part: Initialize \texttt{\@tempdim a} to some sensible value (pr/3327) 121

v1.04e
\part: Replaced tilde with \texttt{\nobreakspace} 103
\num@figure: Replaced tilde with \texttt{\nobreakspace} 116
\num@table: Replaced tilde with \texttt{\nobreakspace} 117

v1.09
@startonecolumn: Added \texttt{\number\year} macro. 64
General: Changed \texttt{\textwidth} to 0.99\textwidth to prevent overflows. Not a good fix. 82
Fixed spacing problem with committee option. 132
\authorizationform: Fixed spacing problem with committee option. 97, 98
\maketitle: Fixed spacing problem with committee option. 95
\paragraph: Added \texttt{\@headingalignment}. 109
\subparagraph: Added \texttt{\@headingalignment}. 110
\subsection: Fixed numbering bug by increasing level. 108
\titlepage: Fixed spacing problem with committee option. 95

v1.0g
\theindex: Moved the setting of \texttt{\@restonecoltrue} 125

v1.11
\chapter: Renamed \texttt{\beforechaptervspace} etc. to \texttt{\chapterbeforeskip} 106
\@toctoupper rather than \texttt{\@toupper} 104
\part: Renamed \texttt{\beforechaptervspace} etc. to \texttt{\chapterbeforeskip} 103
\@toctoupper rather than \texttt{\@toupper} 103
General: Added \texttt{\@toctoupper} 58
Added tocupper option 12, 72
Included lengths as well as fonts. These should probably be lengths and use \texttt{\setlength}, 117
but this seems to add an extra space between the heading and the text which I do not know how to avoid. 74
Provided a starred form of the commands 108
Provided heading spacing lengths. 66
Renamed \texttt{\beforechaptervspace} etc. to \texttt{\chapterbeforeskip} etc. and moved these 66
Replaced magic numbers 108
Used \texttt{\@toctoupper} rather than \texttt{\@toupper} 108
\section: Used \texttt{\@toctoupper} rather than \texttt{\@toupper} 108

v1.12
General: Added \texttt{\lofindent and \loflabelwidth} to replace magic numbers. 123
Added \texttt{\lofindent} and \texttt{\lotindent} 67
Added \texttt{\loflabelwidth} and \texttt{\lotlabelwidth} 67
Added \texttt{\lotindent} and \texttt{\lotlabelwidth} to replace magic numbers. 123

v1.13
\@makechapterhead: Moved brace so that \texttt{\par\nobreak} are included in the same font grouping: this removes a bug where the chapter heading was not spaced properly between lines. 107
\@makeschapterhead: Moved brace so that \texttt{\par\nobreak} are included in the same font grouping: this removes a bug where the chapter heading was not spaced properly between lines. 107
\@startonecolumn: Added \texttt{\faculty} command. 63
General: Added \texttt{\@faculty} and similar options. 132
Darren added \texttt{\degreetitlefont}. 65
Darren added ma, masc, meng options and change number of signatures. 71
Darren added the graphics package if the logo option is used. 79
Darren added upperdegree title and upperinstitution options. Added a bunch of others. 70
Fixed \MakeUppercase problem: make sure that you give the arguments. The construction
\if\MakeUppercase\fi{text} does not work. 132
\titlepage: Added \@faculty and similar options. 95
Fixed \MakeUppercase problem: make sure that you give the arguments. The construction
\if\MakeUppercase\fi{text} does not work. 95

v1.15
General: Darren changed \normalfont to \titlepagefont 132
\titlepage: Darren changed \normalfont to \titlepagefont 95

v1.17
\chapter: We now set the pagestyle for this page to plain as was the default for the original classes.
This was the default behaviour and is referenced for example in the fancyhdr package. Ultimately
there should be an option for setting this style. . 104

v1.19
General: Added % to \def@evenhead{ and \def@oddhead{ commands on their own line so that
an extra space is not inserted causing the previous overflow. 
Now the 0.99 factor can be removed. Thanks to James P.
Zibin for this fix. 82

v1.21
@startonecolumn: Department is now your program. –Darren Peets 63

General: Added university flavour packages: mforbes 130
Darren added upperprogram, which will appear on title page. 70
Darren moved much of title page into comments, to meet new
UBC FoGS guidelines. 132
\titlepage: Darren moved much of title page into comments, to meet new UBC FoGS guidelines. 95

v1.24
@endonecolumn: This generically stores page parameters now so
that one can redefine textwidths etc. by starting a single column
and then restore the settings at the end. 59
\maketitle: No indenting for titlepage 93

v1.28
General: Removed \preface, \acknowledgements and related commands. 16, 98, 128
abstract: Changed \chaptertoc to \chapter[]. 112
thebibliography: Changed \chaptertoc to \chapter[]. 124
\listoffigures: Changed \chaptertoc to \chapter[]. 123
\listoftables: Changed \chaptertoc to \chapter[]. 123
\tableofcontents: Changed \chaptertoc to \chapter[]. 120

v1.32
@chapter: Added float package compatibility (CD) 105
I have my doubts whether this heading appear at the right place in a 2 column
thesis (Christopher Dutchyn). Two-column thesis support is
sketchy: one needs a provision for wide-equations etc. with
column wrapping like REV-Tex4 to do this (but footnote
placement is messed up there) (MMF). 105
Renewed float@listhead after preamble (CD) 105

288
\makechapterhead: Ensure chapter and chapter* titles line up when \committespacing and \@committee set (CD) .......... 106
General: \chapterfont should be \chapterheadfont (CD) .... 16
Added tocitalic option (CD) 12, 72
Added tocitoitalic (CD) .... 58
abstract: Added TOC parameter for later munging. (CD) ... 112
thebibliography: Added TOC parameter for later munging. (CD) .... 124
theindex: Add extra space to line up Index name – close enough (CD) ............... 126
Ensure that index appears in TOC (CD) ............... 126
\listoffigures: Added TOC parameter for later munging. (CD) ............... 123
\listoftables: Added TOC parameter for later munging. (CD) ............... 123
\tableofcontents: Added TOC parameter for later munging. (CD) ............... 120

v1.33
General: Implemented several requests made by Max Read of the UBC FoGS. Many of these were actually implemented by Joseph Tam ............... 24

v1.34
General: Added (no)bibnum option (MMF) ............... 73
Added default argument definitions here (MMF) ............... 131
Added pagenum... and (no)bibnum options (MMF) ... 12
Added pagenum... options (MMF) ...................... 68
Added support for pagenum... options (MMF) and cleaned up code. ...................... 82
Changed to \ProcessOptions* (MMF) ............... 79
thebibliography: Added optional bibnum flag support (MMF) 124

v1.40
General: Added (no)chaptersetreset option (MMF) ............... 72
Added default nochaptersetreset ............... 131
Added optional chaptersetreset flag support (MMF) ............... 127
thebibliography: Removed \addcontentsline from within argument of \chapter* because this was causing an error. Added \chaptermark to change headings (thanks to Abhishek Gupta for pointing this out (MMF)) ............... 124
\ps@headings: Added starred versions \chaptermark* and \sectionmark* and cleaned up a bit. ...................... 85

v1.43
\chapter: Added \fmttocentry (MMF) ............... 104
\part: Added \fmttocentry (MMF) ............... 103
General: Added appendicestoc option. ...................... 73
Added paranthesis for \textit argument (MMF) ............... 58
\appendix: Added appendicesname to toc and completed code for appendixpart option. Added \fmttocentry (MMF) .... 114
abstract: Added \fmttocentry (MMF) ............... 137
Changed \chapter[] to \chapter. Changing the syntax of \chapter may break compatibility with packages like hyperref so we revert to the default behaviour which includes the argument in the toc (MMF). ...................... 112
thebibliography: Added \fmttocentry (MMF) .... 124
theindex: Added \fmttocentry (MMF) ............... 126
\@chapter: Added \fmttocchapterpage and (MMF) ............... 122
\chaptermakNoStar commands to prevent errors. \chaptermakMarkStar \chaptermakNoStar commands to prevent errors. There was a runningheader bug here because \chaptermakMark was modified directly.

\subparagraphstarmark: Moved definition of \chaptermakMark earlier. The code should only modify \chaptermakMarkStar and \chaptermakNoStar commands to prevent errors, but should ensure that \chaptermakMark etc. are called to execute user code.

\subparagraphstarmark: Reverted \sectionmakMark and \chaptermakMark to original style with nothing fancy. No \...mark...Star stuff. \subsectionmakMarkStar \subsectionmakNoStar commands to prevent errors. There was a runningheader bug here because \chaptermakMark was modified directly.

v1.54

General: Added \csname to splice the if and the argument to \condupper. Just trying to form a simple splice fails because a space gets inserted.

v1.55

thebibliography: Added \bibsection command like natbib so that when natbib overwrites \thebibliography it uses our formatting and marking.

Put the \...mark commands inside the \section command as suggested by the fancyhdr.dtx documentation to prevent it from wrapping. The classes.dtx documentation, however, warns from doing this for \chapter because it might be gobbled.

\ps@headings: Simplified \chaptermakMark and \sectionmakMark commands, removing starred version. This was non-standard can caused some problems.

\ps@myheadings: Reverted \sectionmakMark and \chaptermakMark to original style with nothing fancy. No \...mark...Star stuff.

\subparagraphstarmark: Reverted \sectionmakMark and \chaptermakMark to original style with nothing fancy.

\titlepage: Corrected spelling of fulfillment.

v1.56

\@startonecolumn: Provide \monthname macro.

General: Centered titlepage vertically by default.

Use \monthname for \submitdate as required by the FoGS.

\maketitle: Added even-odd page staggering if \twoside is chosen.

\ps@headings: Included missing end brace that was causing problems.

v1.57

General: Added \clearpage to facilitate the new requirements of a blank page before sections.

Added \doublepagenumbering.

\authorizationform: Use blank page when clearing the page.

\backmatter: Removed the forcing of \cleardoublepage. This allows the various matters to be used with chapters than insert blank pages without inserting extra blank pages.

abstract: Use custom \clearpage command to optionaly insert a blank facing page when clearing the page.

\chapter: Use custom \clearpage command to optionaly insert a blank facing page when clearing the page.

\frontmatter: Use custom \doublepagenumbering rather than forcing \cleardoublepage. This allows the various matters to be used with chapters than insert blank pages without inserting extra blank pages.
\texttt{\if@openrightblank} Macro \texttt{\mainmatter}: Use custom \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} rather than forcing \texttt{\cleardoublepage}. This allows the various matters to be used with chapters than insert blank pages without inserting extra blank pages. . . 102
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\paragraph}: Reset \texttt{\suppressblankpagefalse} flag. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 109
\texttt{\section}: Reset \texttt{\suppressblankpagefalse} flag. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 108
\texttt{\subsection}: Reset \texttt{\suppressblankpagefalse} flag. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 108
\texttt{\subsubsection}: Reset \texttt{\suppressblankpagefalse} flag. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 109
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. No need for a blank page at the beginning. (Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.) . 102
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Only call \texttt{\blankdoublepage} if \texttt{twoside}. (Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.) . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added \texttt{\cleardoublepage} before setting page numbering if \texttt{oneside} so arabic number starts on the *next* page. (Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.) . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} call to update the header properly. Especially in the Bibliography. . . . . . 107
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} command for internal use. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 82
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added \texttt{\cleardoublepage} before setting page numbering if \texttt{oneside} so arabic number starts on the *next* page. (Thanks to Valentin Koch for pointing this out.) . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} call to update the header properly. Especially in the Bibliography. . . . . . 107
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} command for internal use. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 82
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} call to update the header properly. Especially in the Bibliography. . . . . . 107
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} command for internal use. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 82
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} command for internal use. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 82
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} call to update the header properly. Especially in the Bibliography. . . . . . 107
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} command for internal use. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 82
\texttt{\maketitle}: Enabled this. . . . . . 94
\texttt{\part}: Use custom \texttt{\clearpage} command to optionally insert a blank facing page when clearing the page. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 102
\texttt{\frontmatter}: Removed \texttt{\doublepagenumbering} and added \texttt{\blankdoublepage}. With the new \texttt{\if@suppressblankpage} command, this will not create spurious blank pages anymore. 102
\texttt{\mainmatter}: Added back the \texttt{\chaptermarkStar} command for internal use. . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . . 82
thebibliography: Added \*starmark call. We do this unconditionally here because the starmark option may not be selected. There should be no harm in calling this twice. 124
\paragraph: Added \*starmark call. 109
\ps@draft: Gobble \*starmark commands 87
\ps@myheadings: Gobble \*starmark commands 90
\section: Added \*starmark call. 108
\subparagraph: Added \*starmark call. 110
\subsection: Added \*starmark call. 108
\subsubsection: Added \*starmark call. 109
\v1.65
General: Add the hyperref option linktocpage as a default and added more comments about this package. 24, 42
\v1.67
General: As of September 2010 UBC no longer wants a Statement of Co-authorship, but included this information in the Preface (which has moved). The sample has been updated to demonstrate this. 24
\v1.68
thebibliography: Moved \*starmark from within the sectioning command as this was causing a problem with babel. (This probably breaks hyperref a bit.) 124
\v1.69
General: Add hook to change names if babel is used (fixes issue 11) 128
\v1.70
General: Move \backmatter after appendices so that appendices and references therein (equations, sections, etc.) are numbered. Thanks to Shahab Kaynama for pointing this out. Fixes issue 12. 24
\v1.71
General: Added \if@parttocdots (MMF) 57
\l@part: Added \if@parttocdots (MMF) 121

Index

Numbers written in italic refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in roman refer to the code line where the entry is used.

10pt= \subitem ++\10pt+, \main{335}
11pt= \subitem ++\11pt+, \main{335}
12pt= \subitem ++\12pt+, \main{335}
addtocounter= \subitem ++\addtocounter+, 1300, 1303, 1349, 1353, 1356, 1805, 1813, 1851
addsignature= \subitem ++\addsignature+, 104, 127, 130, 242, 245, 252
addto= \subitem ++\addto+, 1882
addtocontents= \subitem ++\addtocontents+, 1359, 1360, 1601
advisor= \subitem ++\advisor+, \main{181}, 224, 943
advisortitle= \subitem ++\advisortitle+, \main{181}, 225, 944
afterpage= \subitem ++\afterpage+, 44, 565, 572, 577, 579, 860, 1187, 1201
abstract= \subitem ++\abstract+, \main{1893}
abstractfont= \subitem ++\abstractfont+, 266, 479, 523, 571, 617
abstractname= \subitem ++\abstractname+, \main{1893}
abstractpage= \subitem ++\abstractpage+, 1201
addcontentsline= \subitem ++\addcontentsline+, 1813, 1851
appendix= \subitem ++\appendix+, \main{1594}
appendicestoc= \subitem ++\appendicestoc+, \main{458}
appendicesname= \subitem ++\appendicesname+, \main{458}
appendixname= \subitem ++\appendixname+, \main{455}
appendixpage= \subitem ++\appendixpage+, 1201
arabic= \subitem ++\arabic+, 234--239, 950--955
arraycolsep= \subitem ++\arraycolsep+, \main{1610}
arrayrulewidth= \subitem ++\arrayrulewidth+, \main{1612}
AtBeginDocument= \subitem ++\AtBeginDocument+, 14, 15, 118, 1371, 1376, 1797, 1880, 1928
AtEndOfPackage= \subitem ++\AtEndOfPackage+, 462
author= \subitem ++\author+, \main{153}, 215, 938, 1136
authorfont= \subitem ++\authorfont+, 52, 143, 187, \main{259}, 525, 572, 619, 1151
authorizationform= \subitem ++\authorizationform+, \main{1182}
backmatter= \subitem ++\backmatter+, 754, 1250, \main{1285}
\v1.72
General: As of September 2010 UBC no longer wants a Statement of Co-authorship, but included this information in the Preface (which has moved). The sample has been updated to demonstrate this. 24
\v1.73
thebibliography: Moved \*starmark from within the sectioning command as this was causing a problem with babel. (This probably breaks hyperref a bit.) 124
\v1.74
General: Add hook to change names if babel is used (fixes issue 11) 128
\v1.75
General: Move \backmatter after appendices so that appendices and references therein (equations, sections, etc.) are numbered. Thanks to Shahab Kaynama for pointing this out. Fixes issue 12. 24
\v1.76
General: Added \if@parttocdots (MMF) 57
\l@part: Added \if@parttocdots (MMF) 121

Index

Numbers written in italic refer to the page where the corresponding entry is described; numbers underlined refer to the code line of the definition; numbers in roman refer to the code line where the entry is used.

10pt= \subitem ++\10pt+, \main{335}
11pt= \subitem ++\11pt+, \main{335}
12pt= \subitem ++\12pt+, \main{335}
addtocounter= \subitem ++\addtocounter+, 1300, 1303, 1349, 1353, 1356, 1805, 1813, 1851
addsignature= \subitem ++\addsignature+, 104, 127, 130, 242, 245, 252
addto= \subitem ++\addto+, 1882
addtocontents= \subitem ++\addtocontents+, 1359, 1360, 1601
advisor= \subitem ++\advisor+, \main{181}, 224, 943
advisortitle= \subitem ++\advisortitle+, \main{181}, 225, 944
afterpage= \subitem ++\afterpage+, 44, 565, 572, 577, 579, 860, 1187, 1201
abstract= \subitem ++\abstract+, \main{1893}
abstractfont= \subitem ++\abstractfont+, 266, 479, 523, 571, 617
abstractname= \subitem ++\abstractname+, \main{1893}
abstractpage= \subitem ++\abstractpage+, 1201
arabic= \subitem ++\arabic+, 234--239, 950--955
arraycolsep= \subitem ++\arraycolsep+, \main{1610}
arrayrulewidth= \subitem ++\arrayrulewidth+, \main{1612}
AtBeginDocument= \subitem ++\AtBeginDocument+, 14, 15, 118, 1371, 1376, 1797, 1880, 1928
AtEndOfPackage= \subitem ++\AtEndOfPackage+, 462
author= \subitem ++\author+, \main{153}, 215, 938, 1136
authorfont= \subitem ++\authorfont+, 52, 143, 187, \main{259}, 525, 572, 619, 1151
authorizationform= \subitem ++\authorizationform+, \main{1182}
backmatter= \subitem ++\backmatter+, 754, 1250, \main{1285}

293
| strut                  | \subitem strut+, \text{main{794}}, 745|1035, 773|p|\text{83}|\text{88}|\text{o}|\text{88}|, 83|\text{88}|\text{88}|\text{84}|\text{\textbackslash\text{up\textbackslash\text{phantom+}, 704}} |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|-------|---|-----------|-----------|---|-----------|-----------|---|-----------|
| 917, 937, 1056, 1057, 1095, 955, 988, 1000 1059, 1063, | \vrule= \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{vrule+}, 973--975} |
| value                 | \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{value+}, 1240|95|1273, 1278} |
| vbox                  | \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{vbox+}, 26, 31, 972, 1104, 1122} |
| vsize                 | \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{vsize+}, 55, 137, 1096} |
| verb                  | \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{verb+}, 324, 1241, 462, 463, 466, 467, 500, 502, 519} |
| 523, 524, 1225, 1241, 1242 | \text{widowpenalty= \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{widowpenalty+}, 1574} |
| 572, 576–579, verse=verse (environment), 613, 719, 745, 1574 | xdef= \subitem ++\text{\textbackslash\text{xdef+}, 14} |